

LIPPINCOTT'S
Pocket
HISTOLOGY

Lisa Lee



Wolters Kluwer | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins
Health

LIPPINCOTT'S
POCKET
HISTOLOGY

LIPPINCOTT'S

POCKET HISTOLOGY

Lisa M. J. Lee, PhD

Assistant Professor

University of Colorado School of Medicine

Department of Cell and Developmental Biology

Aurora, Colorado



Wolters Kluwer | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins

Health

Philadelphia • Baltimore • New York • London
Buenos Aires • Hong Kong • Sydney • Tokyo

Acquisitions Editor: Crystal Taylor
Product Manager: Lauren Pecarich
Marketing Manager: Joy Fisher Williams
Designer: Stephen Druding
Compositor: Aptara, Inc.

Copyright © 2014 Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, a Wolters Kluwer business.

351 West Camden Street
Baltimore, MD 21201

Two Commerce Square
2001 Market Street
Philadelphia, PA 19103

Printed in China

All rights reserved. This book is protected by copyright. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, including as photocopies or scanned-in or other electronic copies, or utilized by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the copyright owner, except for brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. Materials appearing in this book prepared by individuals as part of their official duties as U.S. government employees are not covered by the above-mentioned copyright. To request permission, please contact Lippincott Williams & Wilkins at 2001 Market Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103, via email at permissions@lww.com, or via website at lww.com (products and services).

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Lee, Lisa M. J.

Lippincott's pocket histology / Lisa M.J. Lee.

p. ; cm.

Pocket histology

Includes index.

ISBN 978-1-4511-7613-1

I. Title. II. Title: Pocket histology.

[DNLM: 1. Histology--Handbooks. QS 529]

QM531

611-dc23

2013009449

DISCLAIMER

Care has been taken to confirm the accuracy of the information present and to describe generally accepted practices. However, the authors, editors, and publisher are not responsible for errors or omissions or for any consequences from application of the information in this book and make no warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the currency, completeness, or accuracy of the contents of the publication. Application of this information in a particular situation remains the professional responsibility of the practitioner; the clinical treatments described and recommended may not be considered absolute and universal recommendations.

The authors, editors, and publisher have exerted every effort to ensure that drug selection and dosage set forth in this text are in accordance with the current recommendations and practice at the time of publication. However, in view of ongoing research, changes in government regulations, and the constant flow of information relating to drug therapy and drug reactions, the reader is urged to check the package insert for each drug for any change in indications and dosage and for added warnings and precautions. This is particularly important when the recommended agent is a new or infrequently employed drug.

Some drugs and medical devices presented in this publication have Food and Drug Administration (FDA) clearance for limited use in restricted research settings. It is the responsibility of the health care provider to ascertain the FDA status of each drug or device planned for use in their clinical practice.

To purchase additional copies of this book, call our customer service department at **(800) 638-3030** or fax orders to **(301) 223-2320**. International customers should call **(301) 223-2300**.

Visit Lippincott Williams & Wilkins on the Internet: <http://www.lww.com>. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins customer service representatives are available from 8:30 am to 6:00 pm, EST.

*I dedicate this book to my parents, whose unconditional love
and sacrifice can never be fully repaid.*

PREFACE

Health professions' curricula around the world are continually evolving: New discoveries, techniques, applications, and content areas compete for increasingly limited time with basic science topics. It is in this context that the foundations established in the basic sciences become increasingly important and relevant for absorbing and applying our ever-expanding knowledge of the human body. As a result of the progressively more crowded curricular landscape, students and instructors are finding new ways to maximize precious contact, preparation, and study time through more efficient, high-yield presentation and study methods.

Pocket Histology, as part of Lippincott's Pocket Series for the anatomical sciences, is designed to serve the time-crunched student. The presentation of histology in a table format featuring labeled images efficiently streamlines study and exam preparation for the highly visual and content-rich subject. This pocket-size, quick-reference book of histology pearls is portable, practical, and necessary; even at this small size, nothing is omitted and a large number of clinically significant facts, mnemonics, and easy-to-learn concepts are used to complement the tables and inform the reader.

I am confident that *Pocket Histology*, along with other books in the anatomical science Pocket Series, will greatly benefit all students attempting to learn clinically relevant foundational concepts in a variety of settings, including all graduate and professional health science programs.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I would like to thank the student and faculty reviewers for their input into this book, which helped create a highly efficient learning and teaching tool. I would also like to thank Dr. Douglas Gould, who encouraged me to put my thoughts for *Pocket Histology* into reality and for his invaluable suggestions to producing this high-yield resource for students.

CONTENTS

Preface vii

Acknowledgments ix

CHAPTER 1 Basic Principles of Histology 1

CHAPTER 2 Epithelial Tissue 11

CHAPTER 3 Connective Tissue 25

CHAPTER 4 Muscle Tissues 51

CHAPTER 5 Neural Tissue 63

CHAPTER 6 Circulatory System 83

CHAPTER 7 Lymphatic System 101

CHAPTER 8 Integumentary System 115

CHAPTER 9 Digestive System 125

CHAPTER 10 Respiratory System 161

CHAPTER 11 Urinary System 175

CHAPTER 12 Endocrine System 189

CHAPTER 13 Male Reproductive System 201

CHAPTER 14 Female Reproductive System 213

CHAPTER 15 Special Sensory System 235

Figure Credits 255

Index 265

Basic Principles of Histology

1

INTRODUCTION

Histology (microanatomy) is the study of the human body at a tissue or sometimes at a cellular level. As disease processes occur at the molecular/cellular levels, manifestations of the disease processes are readily and economically observed at the tissue level using a microscope. To examine tissues under a microscope, several steps to acquire, fix, and stain the samples are necessary. In each of the preparatory steps, a variety of artifacts may be introduced to the tissue samples. A variety of staining agents and methods are available as are types of microscopes to help observe necessary cellular and histologic features.

BASIC PRINCIPLES

TECHNIQUES IN HISTOLOGY

Methods	Purpose
<i>Tissue preparation</i>	
1. Tissue acquisition: Biopsy, surgical resection	1. Sampling tissue to examine microscopically
2. Fixation: Placing tissue samples in a fixative	2. Stopping tissue degradation, killing microorganisms
3. Processing: Series of chemical and heat treatment	3. Removing water from tissue, infiltrating the tissue with hardening agent
4. Embedding: Placing tissue into a hardening agent (paraffin) in a tissue block	4. Placing the tissue into rigid mold
5. Sectioning	5. Slicing the tissue into thin sections (7–12 μm)
6. Staining	6. Staining otherwise transparent tissues with different types of dyes or chemicals to observe cellular details

(continued)

TECHNIQUES IN HISTOLOGY (continued)

Methods

Purpose

Staining methods

1. Hematoxylin and eosin (H&E): Most common staining method using two dyes

- a. Hematoxylin: Basic, positively charged dye

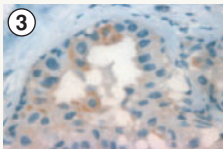
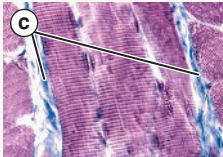
- b. Eosin: Acidic, negatively charged dye

2. Histochemistry: Staining chemicals bind or react with certain cellular structures

- c. Masson trichrome: Stains collagen and mucus blue, cytoplasm pink

- d. Periodic acid–Schiff (PAS): Polysaccharide such as glycogen turns dark red color.

3. Immunohistochemistry: Applies specific antibody targeted at an antigen of interest and secondary antibody tagged with chemical agent that generates brown color



1. Staining basic or acidic structures of the tissue

- a. Purple to blue dye: Attracted to acidic, negatively charged cellular structures such as DNA and RNA in nuclei and on ribosomes in cytoplasm

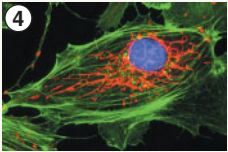
- b. Pink to red dye: Attracted to basic, positively charged cellular structures (many proteins) in cytoplasm

2. Chemical reaction between the staining agent and tissue structures generates color.

- c. Identifies connective tissue content, organization, and makeup

- d. Identifies areas of high polysaccharide concentration such as basement membrane and goblet cells

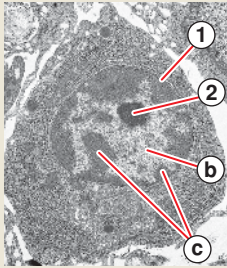
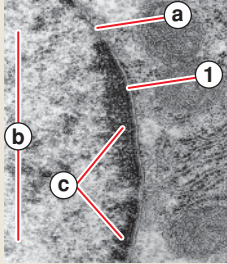
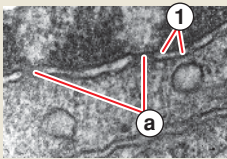
3. Identifying cells or tissues that express the protein of interest

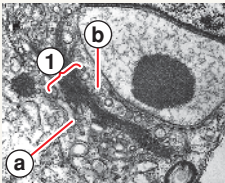
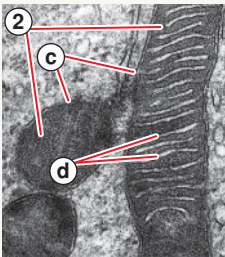
Methods		Purpose
<i>Staining methods</i>		
<p>4. Immunofluorescence: Similar to immunohistochemistry in application of specific antibody, but the secondary antibody is tagged with fluorescent agent, can tag more than one specific protein with different color</p>	 <p>The image shows a single cell with a prominent blue nucleus. The cytoplasm is stained green, and there are numerous red puncta scattered throughout the cytoplasm, representing specific proteins tagged with different fluorescent dyes.</p>	<p>4. Identifying cells or tissues that express the protein of interest, may be able to tag more than one specific protein with different colored fluorescence</p>

Additional Concepts

- **Eosinophilia (acidophilia):** Tendency for cell or tissue structures to stain well with eosin, the acidic dye. Most cytoplasmic proteins are eosinophilic (acidophilic); they stain particularly well with eosin.
- **Basophilia:** Tendency for cell or tissue structures to stain well with hematoxylin, the basic dye. Nuclei, nucleoli, and cytoplasmic ribosomes are basophilic structures; they stain particularly well with hematoxylin.
- **Other naturally occurring pigments in cells**
 - **Melanin:** Black-brown pigments in certain types of cells such as keratinocytes of the skin
 - **Lipofuscin:** Yellow-brown pigment particles that accumulate in certain types of cells such as cardiomyocytes, neurons, and hepatocytes. Thought to be the residues of lysosomes
- **Artifacts:** Any artificial structures, defects, or observations that were introduced during preparatory steps and are not naturally present in vivo. Common artifacts observed in histologic tissue slides include dust particles, separation or folding of tissue slice, exaggeration of spaces between cells and tissues, and empty space effect in previously lipid-filled areas.

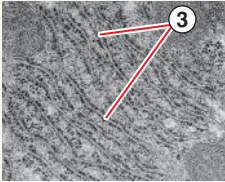
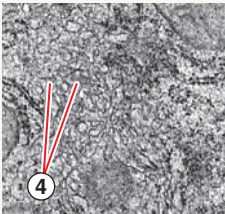
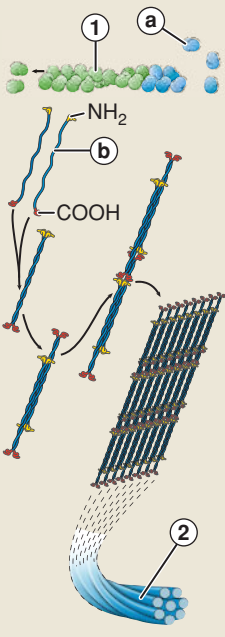
CYTOLOGY

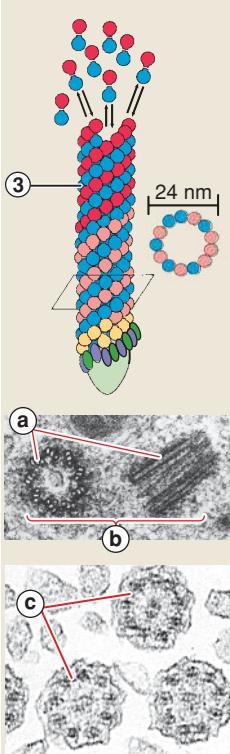
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Nucleus</i>			
<p>Oval to spherical, basophilic structure within most cells</p> <p>1. Nuclear envelope: Two phospholipid bilayers</p>		<p>Storage of DNA and regulation of gene expression</p> <p>1. Forming a tightly controlled barrier between the nucleus and cytoplasm</p>	<p>Central to peripheral in most cells</p> <p>1. Surrounding DNA content</p>
<p>a. Nuclear pore: Opening in nuclear envelope</p> <p>2. Nucleolus: Small, round, basophilic structure</p>		<p>a. Regulating transport across nuclear envelope</p> <p>2. Ribosomal RNA (rRNA) assembly</p>	<p>a. Throughout nuclear envelope</p> <p>2. Within nucleus of translationally active cells</p>
<p>3. Chromatin: DNA in organized spool form</p> <p>b. Euchromatin: Unspooled chromatin, relatively pale staining areas of nucleus</p> <p>c. Heterochromatin: Tightly spooled chromatin, darker staining areas of nucleus</p>		<p>3. Organization of DNA</p> <p>b. Areas more accessible by transcription proteins</p> <p>c. Areas less accessible by transcription proteins</p>	<p>3. Within nucleus</p> <p>b. Transcriptionally active cells have more euchromatin than heterochromatin</p> <p>c. Transcriptionally inactive cells have more heterochromatin than euchromatin</p>

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Other major organelles</i>			
<p>1. Golgi: Stack of membrane-bound sacs</p>  <p>a. Cis-face: Flattened sacs</p> <p>b. Trans-face: Curved sacs</p>		<p>1. Posttranslational modification, sorting, packaging proteins</p> <p>a. Receiving newly formed proteins</p> <p>b. Sending out modified proteins to appropriate locations in the cell</p>	<p>1. Perinuclear in most cells; well developed in secretory, translationally active cells</p> <p>a. Closer to nucleus</p> <p>b. Farther from nucleus</p>
<p>2. Mitochondria: Spherical to elongated oval structure with two membranes</p> <p>c. Outer membrane: Smooth outer layer</p> <p>d. Inner membrane with cristae, complex infoldings</p> 		<p>2. Large amount of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) generation</p> <p>c. Forming an outer boundary, containing ATP transporters</p> <p>d. Containing machineries for aerobic respiration and large amount of ATP generation</p>	<p>2. Numerous in cells that generate and expand much energy</p> <p>c. Outer layer of mitochondria</p> <p>d. Inner layer of mitochondria</p>

(continued)

CYTOLOGY (continued)

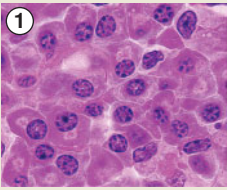
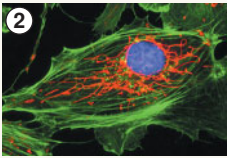
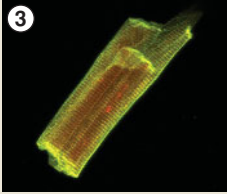
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Other major organelles</i>			
3. Rough endoplasmic reticulum (rER): Series of membrane-bound tubules and sacs with ribosomes on the outside		3. Protein synthesis	3. Abundant in translationally active, secretory cells
4. Smooth endoplasmic reticulum (sER): Series of membrane-bound tubules without ribosomes		4. Producing membrane materials, lipid metabolism	4. Abundant in cells involved in lipid metabolism
<i>Cytoskeleton</i>			
Collection of filamentous fibers in various orientations in a cell		Providing structural support, mechanism for cellular movements, scaffolding and anchoring for organelles; participating in intracellular trafficking	Throughout cell cytoplasm
1. Actin filaments: Thin filaments 6–8 nm in diameter; lengths vary a. Actin monomer subunits		1. Locomotion of cells, cellular processes; forming structural core of microvilli	1. Abundant in muscles within contractile machinery, core of microvilli
2. Intermediate filaments: Rope-like filaments 8–10 nm in diameter		2. Supporting, providing general structural scaffolding to a cell	2. Throughout cytoplasm in most cells

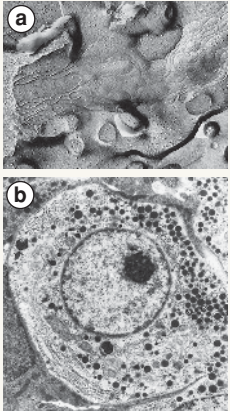
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Cytoskeleton</i>		
<p>Many different types are present but are expressed in a tissue-specific manner</p> <p>b. Eight tetramers of filamentous monomer protein</p> <p>3. Microtubules: Hollow tubular protein fibers 20–25 nm in diameter composed of tubulin proteins</p> <p>a. Centriole: Cylinder of short nine microtubule triplets</p> <p>b. Centrosome: Two centrioles at right angle to each other</p> <p>c. Axoneme: Cylinder of nine microtubule doublets with two single microtubules in the center</p>	 <p>3. Intracellular transportation, generation of cell motility</p> <p>a-b. Controlling microtubule formation</p> <p>c. Movement of cilia, flagella</p>	<p>3. Throughout cytoplasm</p> <p>a-b. Close to nucleus</p> <p>c. Core of cilia and flagella</p>

Additional Concepts

- **Tissue-specific intermediate filaments:** There are several different types of intermediate filaments and they are expressed in a tissue-specific manner (i.e., keratin intermediate filaments are only expressed in epithelial-derived cells and vimentin intermediate filaments are only expressed in mesenchymal-derived cells). Such specificity is useful when identifying the tissue origin of metastatic or dedifferentiated tumors.
- **Cytologic features indicating cellular activity:** Large nucleus; general euchromasia; distinct, large nucleolus (sometimes more than one); well-developed Golgi; and basophilic cytoplasm indicating abundant RNA associated with ribosomes all hint at rich transcriptional and translational activity of the cell. On the other hand, small and mostly heterochromatic nucleus, indistinct nucleolus, and scant cytoplasm indicate cellular inactivity.

MICROSCOPY

Type	Function	
Light	1. Standard microscopy utilizing natural light to observe tissues stained with H&E, other histochemistry and immunohistochemistry a. Phase contrast microscopy: Utilizes slight refractory differences between cellular parts to observe unstained tissues and live cells	
Fluorescence	2. Used to observe fluorescently dyed tissues (immunofluorescence), utilizing UV rays or lasers to excite the fluorescence-tagged epitopes	
Confocal	3. Capable of focusing on a single plane within a tissue, reducing the noise created by other layers within the tissue	

Type	Function	
Electron	<p>4. Utilizes electrons rather than photons to observe cellular structures at much higher resolution</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Scanning electron microscopy allows observation of surface featuresb. Transmission electron microscopy allows observation of cellular structures in 2-dimension	 <p>Figure showing two electron micrographs. (a) Scanning electron microscopy (SEM) image showing the surface of a cell with various protrusions and folds. (b) Transmission electron microscopy (TEM) image showing a cross-section of a cell with internal organelles, including a nucleus and mitochondria.</p>

Epithelial Tissue

2

INTRODUCTION

Epithelial tissue is one of the four basic tissue types composed of diverse morphologic and functional subtypes that cover body surfaces, line body cavities, and form a variety of glands. The unique feature of the epithelial tissues is its highly cellular composition with little extracellular matrix (ECM), which makes cell–cell adhesion and communication very important for the integrity and function of the epithelium. Epithelial tissues rest on top of the basement membrane, which separates epithelia from underlying connective tissues. Because epithelia are avascular, they are heavily dependent on diffusion of nutrients from the underlying connective tissue and have a limit on its thickness. The organization and types of cells in epithelial tissue determine its classification and function (FIGURE 2-1), which varies from protection to absorption and secretion.

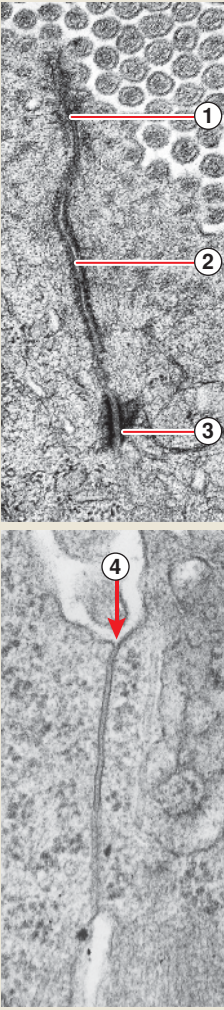
EPITHELIAL TISSUE

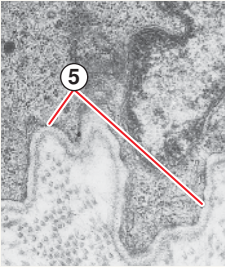
EPITHELIAL INTEGRITY

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Cell–cell junctions</i>		
1. Zonula occludens (occluding, tight, impermeable junction): Cell membranes of adjacent cells are in contact with each other, forming a web-like seal	1. Sealing epithelial cells together, preventing paracellular diffusion of materials, maintaining cell polarity	1. Apical-most level of the lateral cell membrane

(continued)

EPITHELIAL INTEGRITY (continued)

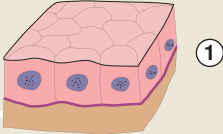
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Cell-cell junctions</i>		
<p>2. Zonula adherens (adhesion junctions): Band-like adhesion sites, close adjacent cell membranes, fuzzy plaques on cytoplasmic membrane made of actin filaments</p> <p>3. Desmosomes (macula adherens): Space between adjacent cells with electron-dense line, dense plaque of intermediate filaments on cytoplasmic membrane</p> <p>4. Gap junctions (communicating junctions): Adjacent cell membranes are in close proximity</p>	 <p>2. Reinforcing cell-cell adhesion, resisting separation between cells</p> <p>3. Anchoring adjacent cells together, reinforcing cell-cell adhesion, resisting separation</p> <p>4. Allowing direct passage of signaling molecules between cells</p>	<p>2. Immediately below zonula occludens on lateral cell membrane</p> <p>3. Scattered throughout lateral membrane below zonula adherens</p> <p>4. Scattered throughout lateral membrane below zonula adherens</p>

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Cell-connective tissue junctions</i>		
5. Hemidesmosomes: Intracellular plaque similar to desmosomes with intermediate filaments		5. Anchoring epithelia to basement membrane and connective tissue, resisting abrasion and force to prevent separation between epithelium and connective tissue
		5. Basal cell surface

Clinical Significance

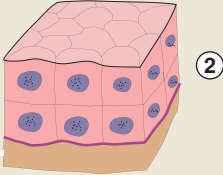
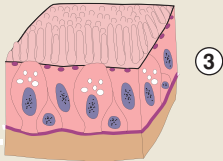
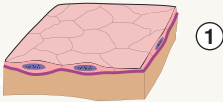
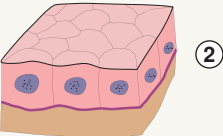
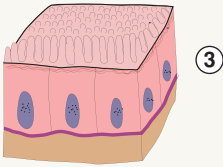
- Bullous pemphigoid:** Chronic blistering skin disease most commonly resulting from autoantibodies that bind the skin's basement membrane, initiating inflammatory reaction that breaks down hemidesmosomal proteins. Patients present with numerous, large, painful blisters as the result of epidermal separation from the underlying connective tissue.
- Pemphigus:** Chronic blistering skin disease similar to bullous pemphigoid, but the autoantibodies bind the keratinocyte desmosomes, resulting in a loss of cell–cell adhesions and blisters within the epidermis as the epithelial cells separate from each other. Hemidesmosomes are intact and maintains contact with the basement membrane.

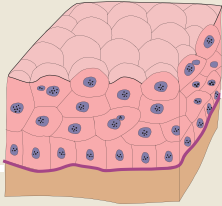
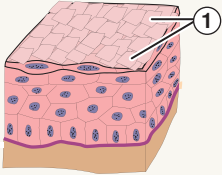
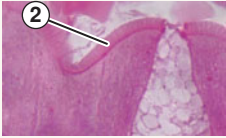
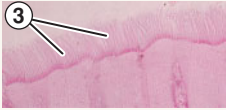
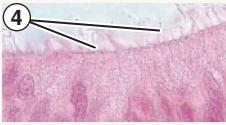
EPITHELIAL CLASSIFICATION

Criteria/ Structure	Function	Location
<i>Number of cell layers</i>		
1. Simple: Single cell layer		1. Lining body cavities or glands, absorption, secretion
		1. Areas that require quick transport of materials, large amount of absorption and secretion

(continued)

EPITHELIAL CLASSIFICATION (continued)

Criteria/ Structure		Function	Location
<i>Number of cell layers</i>			
2. Stratified: More than one layer of cells		2. Lining, protecting areas of the body that need more strength and resistance	2. Areas that require protection and strength
3. Pseudostratified: Cells appear stratified, but every cell contacts basement membrane		3. Lining, absorption, secretion, creating current across epithelium	3. Areas that require movement of secretion or fluids, absorption and secretion
<i>Shape of the apical cells</i>			
1. Squamous: Flat cells with thin and wide cytoplasm and nuclei		1. Fast transport of molecules across cytoplasm, or protection in many layers	1. Areas that require rapid exchange of molecules or protection in many layers
2. Cuboidal: Cube-shaped cells with central, spherical nuclei		2. Relatively fast absorption and secretion	2. Some exocrine and endocrine glands, ducts
3. Columnar: Rectangular, tall cells with central to basal, oval nuclei		3. Large amount of absorption and secretion	3. Lining of the intestine and respiratory tract

Criteria/ Structure		Function	Location
<i>Transitional epithelium</i>			
Number of layers and shape of the cells change based on distention of the organ		Allowing distension and recoil of an organ	Urinary bladder, ureter, calyces, urethra
<i>Apical specialization</i>			
1. Keratinization: Layer of flattened, dead cells		1. Forming protective layer against force, friction, desiccation	1. Areas exposed to repeated and prolonged exposure to force, friction, and air
2. Microvilli: Short, numerous cellular projections		2. Increasing surface area of the luminal border	2. Areas that require large amount of absorption and secretion
3. Cilia: Specialized cellular projections with motile mechanisms		3. Generating movements to create current	3. Areas that require movement of fluids over the epithelium
4. Stereocilia: Long, immobile cellular projections		4. Increasing surface area for absorption, serving as mechanoreceptors	4. Epididymis, special sensory epithelium

Epithelial Classification Formula

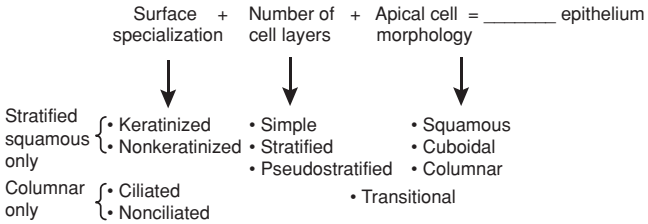
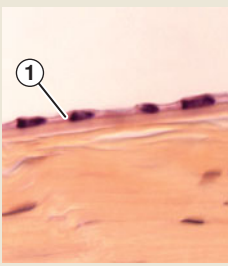



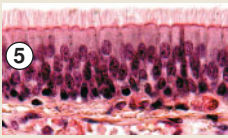



Figure 2-1. The organization and types of cells in epithelial tissue determine its classification and function.

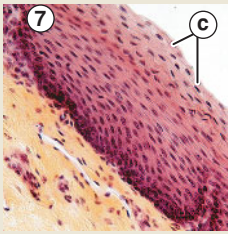
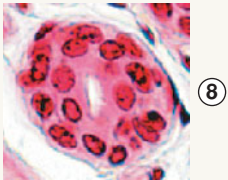
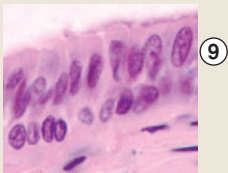
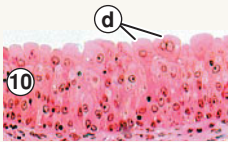
TYPES OF EPITHELIA

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Simple squamous epithelium</i>		
1. Single layer of flattened cells		1. Rapid exchange of gas; small, lipid-soluble molecules; and fluid 1. Luminal lining of vessels, lung alveoli, body cavity serous lining
<i>Simple cuboidal epithelium</i>		
2. Single layer of cube-shaped cells		2. Relatively quick absorption, secretion 2. Kidney tubules, pancreatic acini, small ducts, thyroid follicles

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Simple columnar epithelium</i>		
3. Single layer of rectangular cells		3. Large amount of absorption, secretion, protection
3. Lining and glands of majority of gastrointestinal (GI) tracts		
<i>Ciliated simple columnar epithelium</i>		
4. Single layer of rectangular cells with cilia on apical surface		4. Absorption, secretion, generation of current across the epithelium
4. Lining of fallopian tube		
<i>Ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium</i>		
5. Single layer of ciliated columnar cells, other types of cells intermixed		5. Absorption, secretion, generation of current across the epithelium
5. Most of respiratory tract		
<i>Keratinized stratified squamous epithelium</i>		
6. Thick layer of cells		6. Protection from repeated, prolonged exposure to force and friction, preventing desiccation
a. Cuboidal cells on basement membrane		
b. Flattened, eosinophilic, anucleate cells on apical surface		


(continued)

TYPES OF EPITHELIA (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium</i>			
<p>7. Thick layer of cells; cuboidal cells on base-mem- brane</p> <p>c. Flattened, but nucle- ated cells on apical surface</p>		7. Protection from repeated, prolonged exposure to force and friction	7. Oral cavity, esophagus, vagina, anal canal
<i>Stratified cuboidal epithelium</i>			
8. Two or more layers of cuboi- dal cells		8. Maintaining the shape and patency of ducts	8. Interlobular and intra-lobular ducts
<i>Stratified columnar epithelium</i>			
9. Two or more layers of rect- angular cells		9. Maintaining the shape and patency of larger ducts	9. Terminal ducts
<i>Transitional epithelium</i>			
<p>10. More than one layer of polygonal cells</p> <p>d. Dome cells: Rounded, sometimes binucle- ate cells protruding out into the lumen on apical sur- face</p>		10. Reducing number of layers and flattening the cells as the organ distends, then recoiling back to normal shape	10. Lining of calyces, renal pel- vis, ureter, urinary bladder, portions of urethra


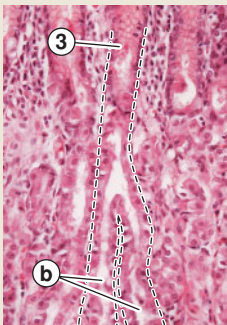

Additional Concepts

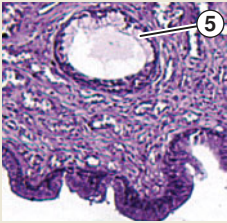

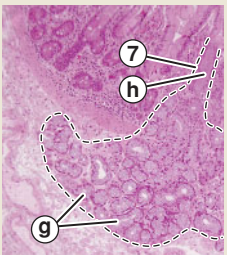
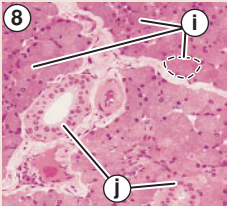
- **Endothelium:** Simple squamous epithelium that lines the lumen of the vessels.
- **Mesothelium:** Simple squamous epithelium that lines the serous membrane of the body cavities.
- **Respiratory epithelium:** Ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium that lines most of the conducting portions of the respiratory system.
- **Turnover:** Epithelia have the highest turnover rate out of the four basic tissue types. The turnover rate varies depending on location and function; skin epithelium turns over every 30 days and colonic mucosal epithelium turns over every week. With the high turnover rate, susceptibility for acquiring mutations and developing neoplasm is also the highest out of the four tissue types.
- **Lining versus glandular epithelium:**
 - **Lining epithelia:** Cover the surface of the skin or body cavity that are in direct contact with the luminal space.
 - **Glandular epithelia:** Involved in production of secretions released into the lumen or nearby blood vessels. Glandular epithelia are not in direct contact with luminal space and are embedded in connective tissues, separated by the basement membrane.

GLANDS		
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Exocrine glands</i>		
Secrete into the lumen directly or via the duct 1. Unicellular: Single goblet-shaped cell within lining epithelium		1. Mucous secretion 1. Scattered within lining epithelia of respiratory tract and GI tract

(continued)

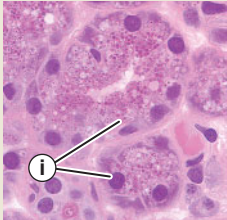
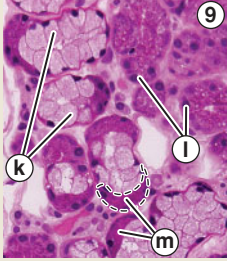
GLANDS (continued)


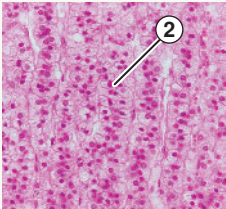
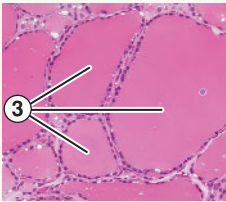
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Exocrine glands</i>			
<p>2. Simple tubular: Test-tube-shaped glands</p> <p>a. Secretory unit: Simple columnar epithelium</p>		2. Mucous secretion	2. Small and large intestine
<p>3. Simple branched tubular: More than one test-tube-shaped gland sharing a common duct or opening into lumen</p> <p>b. Secretory units: Simple columnar epithelium</p>		3. Mostly mucous secretion	3. Stomach pylorus
<p>4. Simple coiled tubular: Long, convoluted gland</p> <p>c. Secretory unit: Simple cuboidal to stratified cuboidal epithelium; larger, pale staining cells</p> <p>d. Duct: Stratified cuboidal epithelium; smaller, darker staining cells</p>		4. Sweat secretion	4. Skin sweat glands

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Exocrine glands</i>		
<p>5. Simple acinar: Single spherical gland draining into a short duct</p> <p>e. Secretory unit: Simple cuboidal to columnar epithelium</p>	<p>5. Mucous secretion</p>	<p>5. Glands of Litre near penile urethra</p>
		
<p>6. Simple branched acinar: More than one spherical gland draining into a common duct</p> <p>f. Secretory unit: Stratified cuboidal epithelium, cells are large and vacuolated</p>	<p>6. Sebum secretion</p>	<p>6. Skin sebaceous glands</p>
		
<p>7. Compound tubular: More than one tubular gland and more than one duct opening into lumen</p> <p>g. Secretory unit: Simple columnar epithelium, pale-staining cells</p> <p>h. Ducts: Simple columnar epithelium, dark-staining cells</p>	<p>7. Mucous secretion</p>	<p>7. Brunner glands of duodenum</p>
		
<p>8. Compound acinar: More than one spherical gland, more than one duct of varying size</p>	<p>8. Watery proteinaceous secretion</p>	<p>8. Parotid glands, pancreas, mammary glands</p>
		

(continued)

GLANDS (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Exocrine glands</i>		
<p>i. Secretory units: Simple cuboidal to pyramidal, mostly serous secreting cells filled with secretory granules</p>		
<p>j. Ducts: Simple cuboidal, simple columnar, stratified columnar</p>		
<p>9. Compound tubuloacinar: More than one tubular and spherical gland, more than one duct of varying size</p>		<p>9. Mucous and serous secretion</p>
<p>k. Simple columnar secretory units</p>		<p>9. Submandibular and sublingual salivary glands</p>
<p>l. Simple cuboidal secretory units</p>		
<p>m. Demilunes: Simple columnar tubular glands capped at the end by the hemispherical simple cuboidal acinar gland</p>		
<p>n. Ducts: Simple cuboidal, simple columnar, stratified columnar</p>		

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Endocrine glands</i>			
Secrete into nearby capillary network, no ducts present		Signal distant target cells to respond to hormonal signals	
1. Unicellular: Single cells often within glandular epithelia, subnuclear secretory vesicles released into underlying connective tissue	 A light micrograph showing several individual endocrine cells. Each cell has a prominent, centrally located nucleus and a clear cytoplasm containing small, dark-staining secretory vesicles. A white circle with the number '1' is placed over one of the cells, with a line pointing to it.	1. Release of hormones affecting the epithelium they reside in	1. Scattered throughout GI tract
2. Cords: Plates of polygonal cells supported by reticular tissue and surrounded by abundant capillaries	 A light micrograph showing a dense arrangement of polygonal endocrine cells organized into cords or plates. The cells are closely packed, and the overall structure is supported by a network of reticular tissue. A white circle with the number '2' is placed over the cords, with a line pointing to them.	2. Release of various hormones	2. Pituitary, parathyroid, and adrenal glands; islets of Langerhans
3. Follicles: Spherical secretory units lined by simple cuboidal endocrine cells, filled with gelatinous colloid	 A light micrograph of thyroid follicles. Each follicle is a spherical or polygonal unit bounded by a single layer of simple cuboidal epithelial cells. The interior of each follicle is filled with a thick, pink-staining gelatinous colloid. A white circle with the number '3' is placed over one of the follicles, with lines pointing to the follicular wall and the colloid.	3. Storage of iodide, production and secretion of thyroid hormones	3. Thyroid gland

Additional Concepts

- Exocrine versus endocrine glands:** Both derive from lining epithelial cells that proliferate and invaginate into underlying connective tissue. Whereas exocrine glands maintain their connection to the lining epithelium via ducts, endocrine glands lose the connection when the ducts degenerate. Exocrine glands release their products to the luminal space of an organ via ducts, whereas endocrine glands release their products within the body via nearby capillary networks.

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	Simple Columnar Epithelium	Pseudostratified Squamous Epithelium	Transitional Epithelium
Nuclei	Relatively even, single row of oval nuclei	Uneven, oval nuclei; difficult to discern a row or rows of nuclei, but pooled toward basal layer	Spherical nuclei scattered throughout the entire thickness of epithelium, uneven, no discernible rows
Apical layer	Relatively distinct, clean boundary	Ciliated	Dome-shaped cells protruding out to luminal space

Connective Tissue

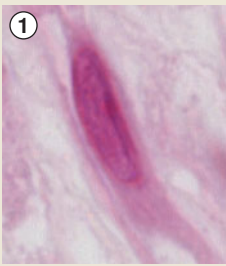
3

INTRODUCTION

Connective tissue is one of the four basic tissue types composed of diverse morphologic and functional subtypes found in a variety of locations ranging from dermis, mesenteries, and tendons to cartilage, bone, and blood. The common characteristic of connective tissue is its composition; relatively sparse cells embedded or suspended in an abundant extracellular matrix (ECM), which is a mixture of fibers, ground substance, and a varying amount of water. The ECM content and the types of cells in connective tissue determine its structure, function, and classification. Connective tissues in general provide structural, nutritional, immunologic, and communicational support to the surrounding tissues and/or organs.



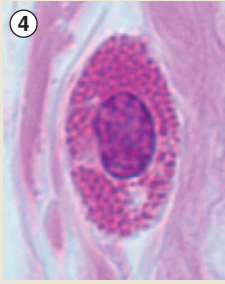
CONNECTIVE TISSUE

CONNECTIVE TISSUE COMPONENTS

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Cells</i>		
1. Fibroblasts: Dendritic to fusiform cells with oval, euchromatic nuclei	 Provide functions of the connective tissue	1. Throughout connective tissue, close to fibers

(continued)

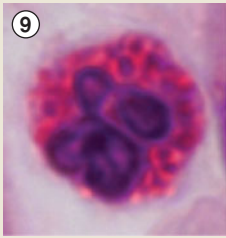
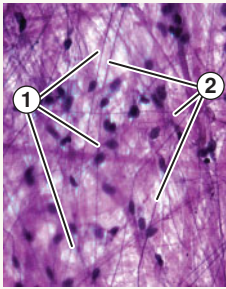
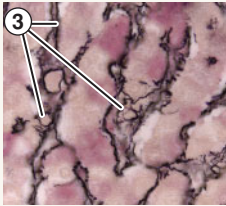
CONNECTIVE TISSUE COMPONENTS (continued)

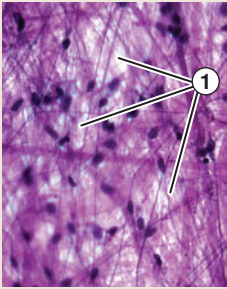
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Cells</i>		
<p>2. Fibrocytes: Flat, fusiform cells with thin, heterochromatic nuclei</p>		<p>2. Maintain fibers</p> <p>2. Throughout connective tissue, close to mature fibers</p>
<p>3. Adipocytes: Spherical cells with large lipid droplets and peripherally displaced, flattened nuclei</p>		<p>3. Store lipids, cushion and insulate nearby structures</p> <p>3. Throughout connective tissue, abundant in adipose connective tissue</p>
<p>4. Mast cells: Large, ovoid cells with spherical nuclei and abundant dark-brown granules</p>		<p>4. Produce and secrete inflammatory mediators such as histamine</p> <p>4. Throughout connective tissue, abundant in dermis and mucosal lamina propria</p>

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Cells</i>		
5. Macrophages: Various sizes and shapes, often difficult to identify	5. Phagocytose pathogens and debris	5. Throughout connective tissue
6. Plasma cells: Oval cells with eccentric "clock face" nuclei, perinuclear clearing due to Golgi, basophilic cytoplasm	6. Produce antibodies	6. Throughout connective tissue, abundant in mucosal lamina propria
7. Eosinophils: Bilobed nuclei, eosinophilic granule-filled cytoplasm	7. Immune function: Mediators of allergic response and parasitic infection response	7. Throughout connective tissue, circulate in blood
8. Lymphocytes: Relatively small oval cells, clear cytoplasm, dense nuclei	8. Immune function: Major role in adaptive response	8. Throughout connective tissue, abundant at the site of chronic inflammation, circulate in blood

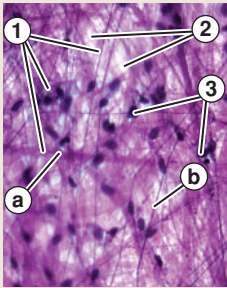
(continued)

CONNECTIVE TISSUE COMPONENTS (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Cells</i>		
<p>9. Neutrophils: Nuclei with three to four lobes, granular cytoplasm</p>		<p>9. Immune function: Acute inflammatory response</p>
<i>Fibers</i>		
<p>1. Collagen fibers: Thick, eosinophilic, long, rope-like strands mostly composed of type I collagen</p>		<p>9. Throughout connective tissue, abundant at the site of acute inflammation, circulate in blood</p>
<p>2. Elastic fibers: Thin, dark, long, branched, hair-like strands composed of elastin and fibrillin</p>		<p>1. Provide flexibility, structural support, and strength to the tissue</p>
<p>3. Reticular fibers: Very thin, short, type III fibrillar strands. Not visible without special stain</p>		<p>2. Provide elasticity, give the tissue the ability to distend and recoil</p>
	<p>3. Provide a delicate meshwork and supporting scaffolding for cells and other fibers in a tissue</p>	<p>1. Scattered throughout connective tissues; abundant in bones, tendons, ligaments</p> <p>2. Scattered throughout connective tissues; abundant in large arteries, dermis</p> <p>3. Scattered throughout connective tissues; abundant in lymph nodes, spleen, glands</p>

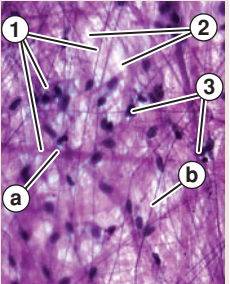
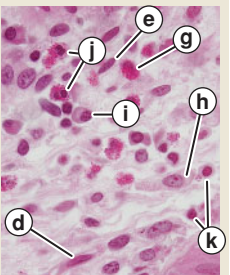
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Ground substance</i>		
<p>1. Viscous, gel-like substance with high water content; appears as clear, nonstaining areas. Major components: Proteoglycans, multiadhesive glycoproteins, glycosaminoglycans</p>	 <p>1. Contribute to mechanical and structural support, anchor fibers and cells in respective areas of the tissue, allow diffusion of nutrients and chemicals throughout the tissue</p>	<p>1. Throughout connective tissue; in between fibers and cells</p>

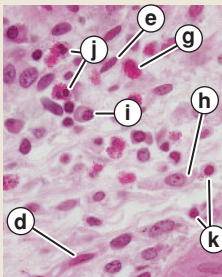
CONNECTIVE TISSUE PROPER

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Loose (areolar) connective tissue</i>		
<p>Relatively cellular connective tissue with all three types of loosely arranged fibers and abundant ground substance. Well vascularized</p>	<p>Support, cushion, and deliver vascular supply to the nearby epithelia. Immediately respond to epithelial injury or contact with antigens</p>	<p>Commonly under epithelia; throughout dermis, lamina propria, layers surrounding glands and ducts</p>
<p>1. Fibers: Sparse, irregularly arranged</p> <p>a. Collagen: Thick, long, eosinophilic, rope-like type I strands</p>	 <p>1. Provide structural support, elasticity, protection</p> <p>a. Provide strength and structural support</p>	<p>Fibers, ground substance, and cells are scattered throughout the tissue</p>

(continued)

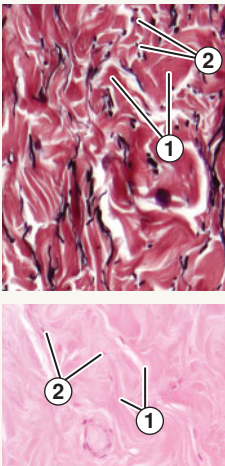

CONNECTIVE TISSUE PROPER (continued)

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Loose (areolar) connective tissue</i>			
<p>b. Elastic: Thin, dark, long, branched, hair-like strands composed of elastin and fibrillin</p> <p>c. Reticular fibers: Very thin, short, type III fibrillar strands. Not visible without special stain</p> <p>2. Abundant ground substance: Nonstaining areas of the tissue</p>		<p>b. Provide elasticity</p> <p>c. Provide a meshwork of scaffolds for cells and fibers</p> <p>2. Attract water into ECM, provide structural strength, allow diffusion of molecules, stabilize position of fibers and cells</p>	
<p>3. Diverse cell types scattered throughout</p> <p>d. Fibroblasts: Dendritic to fusiform cells with oval, euchromatic nucleus</p> <p>e. Fibrocytes: Flat, fusiform cells with thin, heterochromatic nucleus</p>		<p>3. Provide a variety of functions of the connective tissue</p> <p>d. Produce fibers</p> <p>e. Maintain fibers</p>	

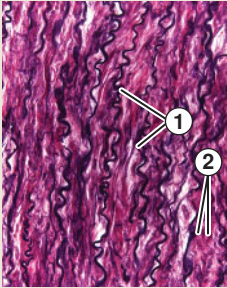
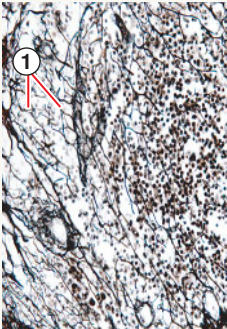
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Loose (areolar) connective tissue</i>			
<p>f. Adipocytes: Spherical cells with large lipid droplets and peripherally displaced, flattened nucleus</p> <p>g. Mast cells: Large, ovoid cells with spherical nuclei and abundant dark-brown granules</p> <p>h. Macrophages</p> <p>i. Plasma cells</p> <p>j. Eosinophils</p> <p>k. Lymphocytes</p> <p>l. Neutrophils</p>		<p>f. Store lipids</p> <p>g. Produce and secrete inflammatory mediators such as histamine</p> <p>h. Phagocytose pathogens and debris</p> <p>i. Produce antibodies</p> <p>j. Immune function: Mediators of allergic response and parasitic infection response</p> <p>k. Immune function: Major role in adaptive response</p> <p>l. Immune function: Acute inflammatory response</p>	

(continued)

CONNECTIVE TISSUE PROPER (continued)

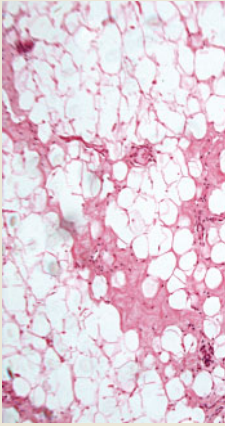
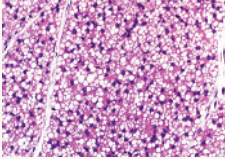
Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Dense irregular connective tissue</i>			
<p>Composed of densely packed mostly collagen fibers in diverse orientations with much less ground substance and sparse fibrocytes</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Collagen fibers: Thick, eosinophilic, rope-like strands cut in various planes due to irregular arrangements Fibrocytes: Thin, dark, condensed nuclei scattered sparsely throughout tissue 		<p>Provide structural support and strength to withstand force applied from multiple directions</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Provide structural support, tensile strength Produce and maintain fibers 	<p>Deeper layer of dermis (reticular dermis) and submucosa</p>
<i>Dense regular connective tissue</i>			
<p>Composed of densely packed collagen fibers arranged in parallel bundles with sparse ground substance and fibrocytes wedged in between fibers</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Collagen fibers: Thick, eosinophilic, rope-like strands in linear arrangements Fibrocytes: Thin, dark, condensed nuclei scattered sparsely throughout tissue, parallel to fibers 		<p>Provide structural support and strength to withstand force applied in one direction (the direction of the fiber orientation)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Provide structural support, tensile strength Produce and maintain fibers 	<p>Tendons, ligaments, aponeuroses</p>

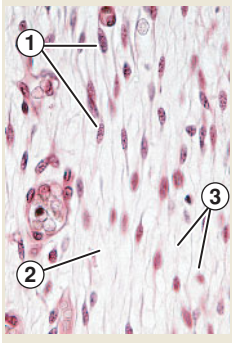
SPECIALIZED CONNECTIVE TISSUE

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Elastic connective tissue</i>			
<p>Composed of parallel layers of elastic fibers interspersed with fibrocytes, other fibers, and smooth muscle cells</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Elastic fibers: Thin, wavy, branching, hair-like strands in parallel layers Fibrocytes and smooth muscles 		<p>Provide structural support while allowing certain level of distension and recoil</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Provide elasticity and flexibility to allow stretching and recoil Produce fibers and aid in recoil 	<p>Large arteries, certain vertebral ligaments</p>
<i>Reticular connective tissue</i>			
<p>Composed of a meshwork of predominantly reticular fibers, fair amount of ground substance, reticulocytes (reticular cells, fibroblasts), and parenchymal cells</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Reticular fibers: Thin, short, fibrillar fibers that form a net-like meshwork Reticulocytes: Dendritic to fusiform specialized fibroblasts 		<p>Provide structural scaffold for relatively soft organs that functionally require a large capillary/lymph network or organs composed mostly of secretory cells</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Provide structural scaffold for an organ Produce and maintain reticular fibers 	<p>Liver, spleen, lymph nodes, pancreas, bone marrow, salivary glands, endocrine glands</p>

(continued)

SPECIALIZED CONNECTIVE TISSUE (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Unilocular (white) adipose tissue</i>		
Composed mostly of unilocular adipocytes: Large spherical cells with a large, single, lipid-filled globule taking up most of the cytoplasmic space with a perinuclear, flattened nucleus		Lipid storage, insulation, and protection Throughout the adult body, hypodermis, mesentery, omentum, and other visceral fat pads
<i>Multilocular (brown) adipose tissue</i>		
Composed mostly of multilocular adipocytes: Large spherical cells with abundant, small, lipid-filled vesicles in cytoplasm; central nuclei; abundant mitochondria		Heat generation Throughout the body of the embryo and infants
<i>Mesenchymal tissue</i>		
Loosely arranged and delicate embryonic connective tissue composed of:		Form embryonic connective tissue from which other types of tissue may arise Throughout developing embryo

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Mesenchymal tissue</i>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Network of mesenchymal cells: Uniform dendritic to spindle-shaped cells 2. Large amount of ground substance: Pale-staining regions 3. Mostly reticular fibers 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Produce ECM, may differentiate into different types of cells 2. Provide structural support 3. Provide structural scaffolding 	
Blood: Covered in <i>Cardiovascular System</i>			

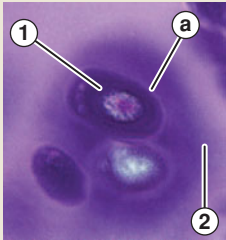
Additional Concepts

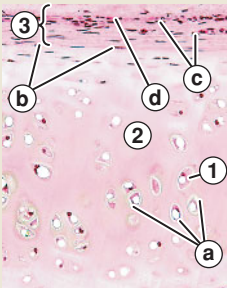
- **Vascularity:**
 - Loose connective tissues: Commonly found under avascular epithelial tissues; are highly vascular; serve as the main nutritional supply to the epithelia as well as a primary site of immune response in case of injury or infection
 - Dense regular connective tissues: Are not as vascular; hence, injuries to tendons or ligaments tend to heal slowly.
- **Mesenchyme:** The specialized connective tissue of the developing embryo and fetus. Common misconception is that mesenchyme derives from the mesoderm, but this is incorrect. Mesenchyme may derive from any of the three germ layers (ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm).
- **Interstitial fluid dynamics:** Since water is one of the major components of the ECM, fluid homeostasis in the connective tissue is extremely important. The balance is maintained by the hydrostatic pressure of the arterioles that initially forces the water out into the interstitium and the osmotic pressure of the terminal capillaries and venules that draws water back into the vessels. Excess interstitial fluid is drained by the lymphatic vessels and is returned to the circulatory system. Disruption of any aspect of this balance may result in edema and excess accumulation of fluid in the tissue.

Clinical Significance

- **Anaphylaxis:** An acute inflammatory reaction involving multiple organs as the result of mast cell and basophil degranulation in response to an allergen exposure. Resulting airway edema, bronchospasm, vasodilation, and increased vascular permeability may be fatal to the patient if not treated immediately. Emergency administration of epinephrine helps to maintain blood pressure and antagonize the inflammatory mediators.
- **Marfan syndrome:** Commonly caused by the abnormal fibrillin expression resulting in abnormal and insufficient elastic fiber formation. Patients tend to exhibit characteristic phenotypic features such as tall stature, caved-in chest, long fingers, and increased susceptibility to ectopia of the lens and aortic dissection.
- **Scurvy:** Vitamin C deficiency that results in impaired collagen formation, negatively affecting connective tissues and organs with high collagen content, thus weakening bones, skin, and oral mucosa

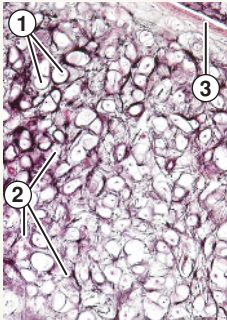
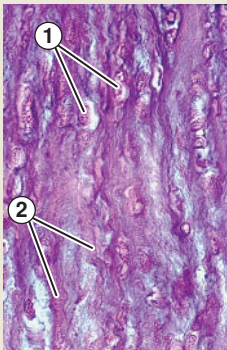
SUPPORTING CONNECTIVE TISSUE: CARTILAGE

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Hyaline cartilage</i>		
<p>Firm, solid, and rigid tissue with limited pliability</p> <p>1. Chondrocytes: Ovoid cells with eccentric round nuclei located within:</p> <p>a. Lacunae: Small spaces fairly evenly spaced</p>	<p>Provide structural support, rigidity, and protection to soft tissues in the vicinity.</p> <p>Provide low-friction joint surfaces and distribute force</p> <p>1. Produce and maintain cartilage ECM</p> <p>a. House chondrocytes</p>	<p>Costal cartilages, articular surfaces, epiphyseal plates, nose</p> <p>1. Throughout cartilage inside lacunae</p> <p>a. Throughout cartilage</p>
 <p>The micrograph shows several ovoid chondrocytes (labeled 1) with eccentric nuclei. They are situated within small, clear spaces called lacunae (labeled a). The lacunae are distributed fairly evenly throughout the cartilage matrix (labeled 2).</p>		

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Hyaline cartilage</i>			
<p>2. ECM: Composed mostly of type II collagen and glycosaminoglycans; appear homogeneous, glassy</p> <p>3. Perichondrium: Dense connective tissue containing:</p> <p>b. Chondroblasts: Resemble fibrocytes</p> <p>c. Fibroblasts/fibrocytes: Dendritic to spindle cells</p> <p>d. Blood vessels</p>	 <p>The micrograph shows a cross-section of hyaline cartilage. A dense, pink-stained layer at the top is labeled '3', representing the perichondrium. Below it is the cartilage matrix, labeled '2'. Within the perichondrium, there are several cell types: 'a' points to fibroblasts/fibrocytes, 'b' points to chondroblasts, and 'c' points to fibroblasts/fibrocytes. 'd' points to a blood vessel within the perichondrium. The cartilage matrix contains numerous small, dark-stained chondrocytes.</p>	<p>2. Attract water that provides resilience and allows diffusion of metabolites throughout avascular cartilage tissue</p> <p>3. Surround, protect, and deliver nutrients to cartilage</p> <p>b. Differentiate into chondrocytes</p> <p>c. Produce ECM of the perichondrium</p> <p>d. Supply cartilage with nutrients and oxygen</p>	<p>2. In between chondrocytes</p> <p>3. Outside of the cartilage</p> <p>b. Within perichondrium, usually in a layer closer to cartilage</p> <p>c. Throughout perichondrium, usually in the outer layer</p> <p>d. Throughout perichondrium</p>
<i>Elastic cartilage</i>			
<p>Firm, solid tissue with flexibility and elasticity that contains:</p>		<p>Provide structural support and rigidity but also a range of flexibility and elasticity to change shape and return to the original form and position</p>	<p>Pinna of the external ear, external auditory meatus, auditory (eustachian) tube, epiglottis</p>

(continued)

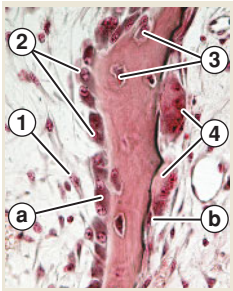
SUPPORTING CONNECTIVE TISSUE: CARTILAGE (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Elastic cartilage</i>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Chondrocytes in lacunae 2. ECM: Composed of abundant elastic fibers and hair-like, branching strands in various orientations 3. Perichondrium: Dense connective tissue 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Produce and maintain ECM 2. Provide flexibility and elasticity 3. Protect and deliver vascular supply to the cartilage 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Throughout cartilage 2. Throughout cartilage, in between chondrocytes 3. Surrounding the outer surface of the cartilage
<i>Fibrocartilage</i>			
<p>Firm, solid tissue that resembles dense connective tissue but contains:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Chondrocytes in lacunae 2. ECM: Composed of abundant collagen fibers and thick, long strands often in one orientation <p>No distinct perichondrium</p>		<p>Provide structural support and rigidity to resist compression and shearing forces and absorb shock</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Produce and maintain ECM 2. Provide strength and flexibility 	<p>Pubic symphysis, annulus fibrosus of intervertebral discs, menisci</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Throughout cartilage 2. Throughout cartilage, in between chondrocytes

Additional Concepts

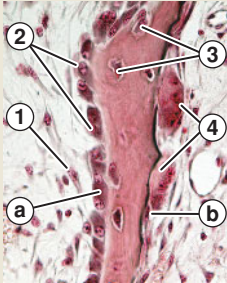

- **Cartilage is avascular:** Despite being a connective tissue, cartilage is avascular and, hence, relies on diffusion of nutrients from the vessels in the perichondrium or other surrounding tissues. Avascularity of the cartilage also contributes to slow and limited ability to heal and repair itself when injury occurs.
- **Growth of cartilage:** Mainly occurs during embryonic, fetal development and childhood, slowly decreasing in adolescence. In adults, cartilage undergoes little to no growth.
 - **Appositional growth:** Chondroblasts in the perichondrium produce cartilaginous matrix and thicken the cartilage from the periphery. Once the chondroblasts become encased in the matrix they produced, they become chondrocytes.
 - **Interstitial growth:** Chondrocytes in the middle of the cartilage divide, and then each daughter cell starts secreting its own cartilaginous matrix around itself, eventually becoming separated from each other by the newly produced cartilage matrix.
 - **Isogenous group:** A group of chondrocytes that arose from a single chondrocyte during interstitial growth. In the early stage, isogenous groups of chondrocytes can be identified by their close proximity to each other or sometimes by a number of chondrocytes sharing a single lacuna.


SUPPORTING CONNECTIVE TISSUE: GENERAL FEATURES OF THE BONE

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Cells</i>		
1. Osteoprogenitors: Pool of mesenchymal stem cells, stellate to squamous morphology, difficult to identify on regular stain		1. Give rise to osteoblasts; with appropriate stimuli, may differentiate into other types of connective tissue cells
		1. Mesenchyme, innermost layer of periosteum; endosteum; bone marrow

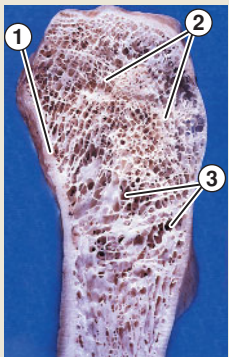
(continued)

SUPPORTING CONNECTIVE TISSUE: GENERAL FEATURES OF THE BONE (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Cells</i>		
<p>2. Osteoblasts:</p> <p>a. Active: Cuboidal to columnar with basophilic cytoplasm and euchromatic nuclei and distinct nucleoli</p> <p>b. Inactive: Squamous, difficult to identify</p>	 <p>2. Secrete osteoid (type I collagen and bony matrix proteins) that calcifies</p>	<p>2. Innermost layer of periosteum; endosteum; usually in contact with the newly forming bone tissue</p>
<p>3. Osteocytes: Osteoblasts encased in calcified matrix mature and become osteocytes. Dendritic morphology</p>	 <p>3. Maintain bony matrix; mechano-transduction</p>	<p>3. Main cell body in lacunae, cell processes in canaliculi</p>
<p>4. Osteoclasts: Large, multinucleated macrophage derivative</p>	<p>4. Resorb bone tissue</p>	<p>4. Resorption bay (Howship lacunae): A concave depression on bone surface, scattered throughout endosteum and periosteum</p>


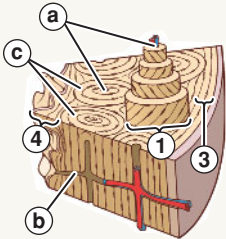
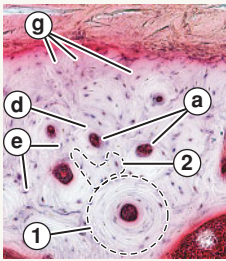
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Coverings</i>		
1. Periosteum: Dense connective tissue		1. Deliver neurovascular supply to the bone, allow tight attachment of the muscles and other structures to the bone
2. Endosteum: Resembles simple squamous epithelium composed of inactive osteoblasts, osteoprogenitors, and osteoclasts	2. Source of new osteoblasts and osteocytes	1. Outer surfaces of most compact bones 2. Inner surfaces of compact bones, canals; outer surfaces of all sponge bones

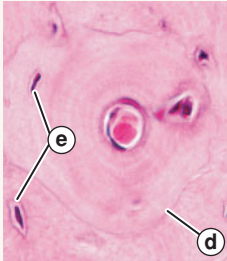
SUPPORTING CONNECTIVE TISSUE: BONE

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
Specialized cells embedded in calcified ECM 1. Compact bone 2. Sponge bone		Weight bearing, structural support, mineral storage 1. Mechanical support, protection, weight transfer, mineral storage 2. Weight transfer, quick mineral turnover
		Long, short, flat, irregular bones of the body 1. Outer surfaces of the bones 2. Inner portion of the bones

(continued)

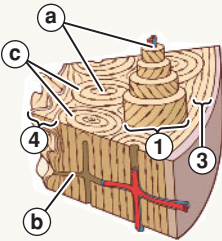
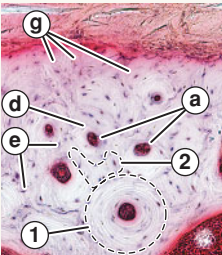
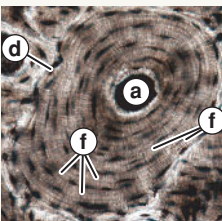
SUPPORTING CONNECTIVE TISSUE: BONE (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
3. Marrow space		3. Site of blood formation and fat storage, lighten the weight of the bone
		3. Spaces in between the sponge bone trabeculae
<i>Compact (dense) bone</i>		
Dense outer portions of the bone composed of:		Weight bearing, weight transfer, protection, site for muscle attachment
1. Haversian system (osteons): Cylindrical structural units		1. Bear and transfer weight in its long axis
a. Central/Haversian canal: Central channel for vessels and nerves		a. Conduct vessels and nerves throughout the length of the osteon
b. Perforating/Volkmann canal: Channel that runs perpendicular to the long axis of osteon		b. Deliver vessels and nerves throughout the thickness of the compact bone
		1. Throughout compact bone, oriented parallel to the long axis of the bone or in the direction of applied force
		a. Center of each osteon
		b. Varies, run perpendicular to the long axis of osteon

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Compact (dense) bone</i>			
<p>c. Concentric lamellae: Concentric layers of bony matrix with collagen fibers in each layer running in opposite direction</p> <p>d. Cement line: Darker-staining line</p> <p>e. Osteocytes in lacunae: Small openings/dots between the layers of concentric lamellae</p> <p>f. Canaliculi: Short, narrow, hair-like channels</p> <p>2. Interstitial lamellae: Noncylindrical layers of bony matrix</p>		<p>c. Layered arrangements and fiber orientation allow optimal weight bearing and even weight transfer</p> <p>d. Demark the outer limits of each osteon</p> <p>e. Monitor and maintain the ECM</p> <p>f. Conduct osteocyte processes, allow them to make physical and chemical contact via adhesions and gap junctions</p> <p>2. Fill the gap between osteons; weight bearing and transferring: Remnant of remodeled osteon</p>	<p>c. Rings of bony matrix in each osteon</p> <p>d. Outer boundary of each osteon</p> <p>e. Wedged in between concentric and interstitial lamellae</p> <p>f. Radiate from each lacuna and often run the width of each lamella</p> <p>2. In between osteons</p>

(continued)


SUPPORTING CONNECTIVE TISSUE: BONE (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Compact (dense) bone</i>		
<p>3. Outer circumferential lamellae: Several layers of bony matrix on the outer most side of the compact bone</p> <p>g. Sharpey fibers: Thick, ropy bundles of collagen type I fibers extending from periosteum into the compact bone</p>	 	<p>3. Bind the osteons from the outside, site of attachment for periosteum</p> <p>g. Tightly anchor periosteum to the compact bone</p>
<p>3. Outermost layer of the compact bone</p> <p>g. Extend from periosteum into the outer concentric lamellae and often deeper into the peripheral osteons</p>	<p>4. Bind the osteons from the inside, site of attachment for endosteum</p>	<p>4. Innermost layer of the compact bone</p>
<p>4. Inner circumferential lamellae: Several layers of bony matrix on the inside of the compact bone</p>		
<i>Sponge (cancellous/medullary) bone</i>		
<p>Network of thin plates or branches of bony tissues with spaces in between:</p>	<p>Some role in weight transfer, reduce the weight of the bones, provide large surface area for bone resorption and formation</p>	<p>Center of diaphysis and epiphysis of long bones and center of most bones</p>

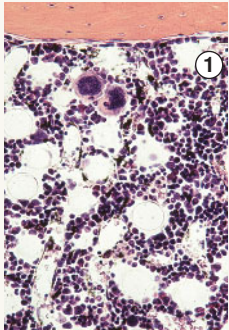
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Sponge (cancellous/medullary) bone</i>			
1. Trabeculae (bony spicule): Small, thin, short bony tissues. In adults, bony matrix is lamellar (layered). No osteons		1. Collectively allow weight transfer, source of quick bone absorption and formation	1. Throughout central portion of most bones
2. Osteocytes in lacunae: Small openings/dots		2. Monitor and maintain bony matrix	2. Throughout trabeculae, in between bony matrix layers
3. Canaliculi: Short, narrow, hair-like channels		3. Conduct osteocyte processes, allow them to make physical and chemical contact via adhesion and gap junctions	3. Radiate from each lacuna and often run the width of each lamella
4. Endosteum:		4. Source of osteoprogenitors, osteoblasts, and osteoclasts	4. Inner surfaces of compact bones, canals; outer surfaces of all sponge bones
a. Inactive: Thin, delicate layer composed mostly of inactive osteoblasts, resembling simple squamous epithelium		a. Monitor and maintain bony matrix	a. Most adults

(continued)

SUPPORTING CONNECTIVE TISSUE: BONE (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<p>b. Active: Composed mostly of active osteoblasts, resemble simple cuboidal to columnar epithelium</p> <p>c. Osteoclasts: Large, multinucleated cells</p>		<p>b. Build bone tissue</p> <p>c. Resorb bone tissue</p>	<p>b. Embryos, infants, and young children</p> <p>c. Scattered throughout endosteum</p>

Marrow cavity (space)

<p>Space between trabeculae of the sponge bone filled with:</p> <p>1. Red marrow: Hematopoietic tissue</p> <p>2. Yellow marrow: Unilocular adipose tissue</p>		<p>Lighten the bone</p> <p>1. Blood cell production</p> <p>2. Lipid storage</p>	<p>1. Most marrow cavities in infants and young children. Marrow cavities of flat bones and vertebrae in adults</p> <p>2. Most marrow cavities of long bones in adults</p>
---	---	---	--

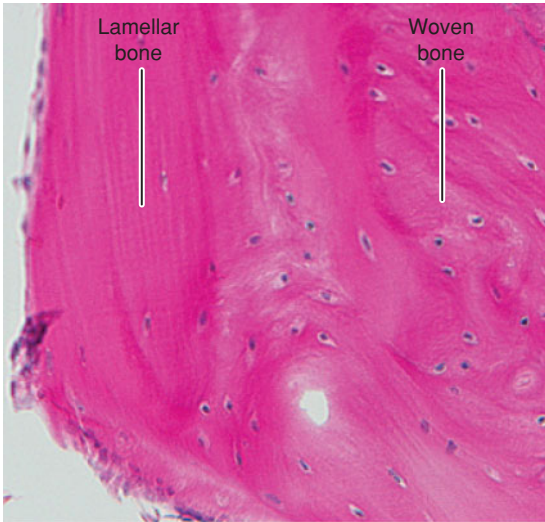


Figure 3-1. Histology of woven versus lamellar bone. (From Cui D. *Atlas of Histology*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2009:92.)

Additional Concepts

- **Woven versus lamellar bone:** Woven bone forms first during development, then is remodeled into lamellar bone (FIG. 3-1).
- **Woven (primary, immature) bone:** First bone tissue that forms during ossification process. Collagen fibers are unorganized; osteocytes in lacunae are randomly scattered throughout bony matrix. Most compact and sponge bone in embryo and fetus initially forms as woven bone. In adults, woven bone is found in limited areas such as the site of healing bone and the alveolar processes of the maxilla and mandible.
- **Lamellar (secondary, mature) bone:** Bone tissue that forms through remodeling of the woven bone. Collagen fibers are well organized; osteocytes in lacunae are regularly arranged and spaced throughout bony matrix, in between layers of bony matrix. Found in most adult compact and sponge bones.
- **Parathyroid hormone (PTH) versus calcitonin:** Two major hormones that regulate bone remodeling and blood calcium level (FIG. 3-2).

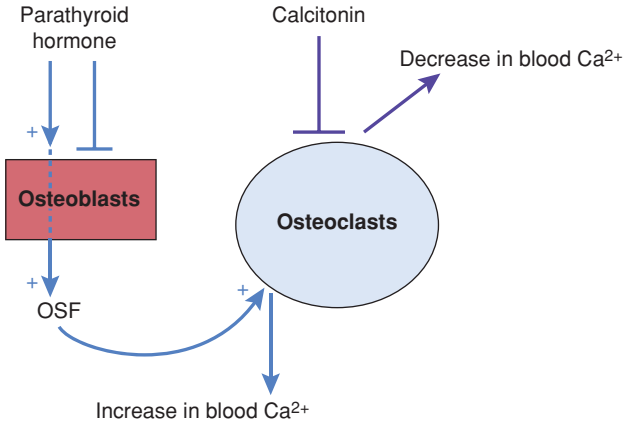


Figure 3-2. Hormonal regulation of bone remodeling and blood calcium level. (Asset provided by Lisa M.J. Lee, PhD. University of Colorado School of Medicine.)

- **PTH:** Is released by the parathyroid glands, inhibits osteoblasts from producing bony matrix, and stimulates its osteoclast-stimulating factor (OSF) secretion, which increases bone reabsorption by the osteoclasts, ultimately increasing the blood calcium level.
- **Calcitonin:** Is released by the parafollicular cells of the thyroid and inhibits osteoclasts, thus reducing bone reabsorption and ultimately decreasing blood calcium level.
- **Membranous versus endochondral ossification**
 - **Membranous (intramembranous) ossification:** Bone formation within the mesenchyme. Some of the mesenchymal cells aggregate, differentiate into osteoprogenitor cells, and give rise to osteoblasts. Osteoblasts produce bony matrix and become encased in it and become osteocytes. Newly formed bone matrices interconnect and remodel to form the compact and sponge bones of the flat bones and portions of irregular bones.
 - **Endochondral ossification:** Bone formation from the cartilage mold. Hyaline cartilage model of the bone forms first from the mesenchyme, which is then replaced by the bone tissue. Most long bones that need to lengthen rapidly form this way due to the ability of hyaline cartilage to form quickly without requiring a direct blood supply. As the cartilage model grows, a bone collar forms around the future diaphysis and blood vessels

grow into the center of the diaphysis to deliver osteoprogenitor cells that establish the primary ossification center. This process occurs in each epiphysis to establish the secondary ossification centers. At the junction between the primary and secondary ossification centers, a disc of hyaline cartilage remains as the growth plate (epiphyseal plate) that continues to produce hyaline cartilage. The rate of the hyaline cartilage replacement with bone tissue increases in adolescence until the entire growth plate becomes calcified, at which point the bone can no longer lengthen.

Clinical Significance

- **Osteoporosis:** Systemic skeletal disease of low bone density and increased susceptibility to fractures and skeletal deformity resulting from imbalance in bone building and reabsorption and/or insufficient calcium and other minerals in diet.
- **Rickets:** Insufficient calcification of bone tissues in children and adolescents due to insufficient calcium in diet or vitamin D deficiency. Skeletal deformity such as bowing of the long bones may occur in severe cases.

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	Hyaline Cartilage	Elastic Cartilage	Fibrocartilage
Fibers	Type II collagen, not obvious	Thin, branching elastic fibers in various orientations	Thick, long, rope-like bundles of collagen type I fibers often run in parallel
ECM	Glassy, homogeneous appearance	Appears “busy” due to abundant elastic fibers that seem to outline many lacunae	Mixture of dense connective tissue and hyaline cartilage
Chondrocytes in lacunae	Relatively well (and evenly) spaced out	Closer to each other with thin bundle of elastic fibers running in between	Smaller in size; often several chondrocytes are grouped together in between bundles of collagen fibers

Once lacunae are observed, the tissue can only be cartilage or bone. In the absence of lamellar organization of the ECM and canaliculi, the tissue can only be one of the three cartilages.

Muscle Tissues

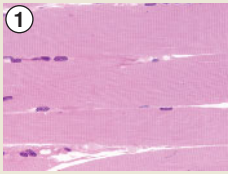
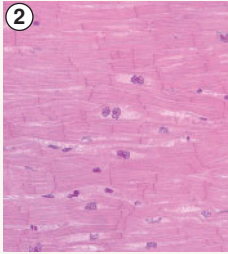
4

INTRODUCTION

Muscle tissues are relatively cell dense, but their unique organization, specialized cell morphology, and stromal content allow effective identification and classification. Muscle tissues are specialized to contract and relax, producing movements of the body and organs.

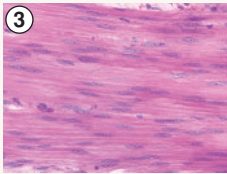
MUSCLE TISSUES

THREE TYPES OF MUSCLE TISSUES

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Skeletal muscle</i>			
1. Composed of long, striated, multinucleated muscle fibers; limited ability to renew	 1	1. Production of major movements of the body	1. All over the body; most are attached to the bones
<i>Cardiac muscle</i>			
2. Composed of short, striated, uninucleate cardiomyocytes with branched cytoplasm, firmly attached to each other via intercalated discs; inability to renew	 2	2. Coordinated contraction and relaxation fills and pumps blood	2. Heart

(continued)

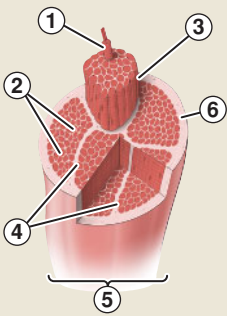
THREE TYPES OF MUSCLE TISSUES (continued)

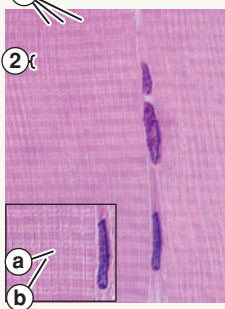
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Smooth muscle</i>		
3. Composed of short, fusiform, uninucleate smooth muscle cells staggered in parallel; able to renew continually	 3. Coordinated contraction of the visceral organs	3. Visceral organs, gastrointestinal tract (GI), blood vessels, exocrine glands, etc.

Additional Concepts

- Each muscle cell is also referred to as a muscle fiber.
- **Special terminologies for muscle fibers**
 - **Sarcolemma:** Muscle cell membrane
 - **Sarcoplasm:** Muscle cell cytoplasm
 - **Sarcoplasmic reticulum:** Muscle cell smooth endoplasmic reticulum (sER)
- Satellite cells in skeletal muscles have limited ability to proliferate and differentiate into skeletal muscle cells; as a result, extensive injury and destruction of muscle tissues cannot be fully repaired.
- Muscle-building exercises induce skeletal muscle hypertrophy (enlargement of each muscle fiber) rather than hyperplasia (increase in number of muscle fibers).

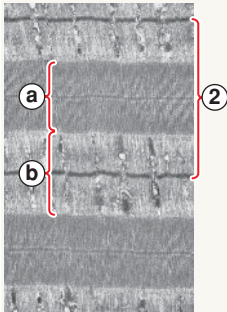
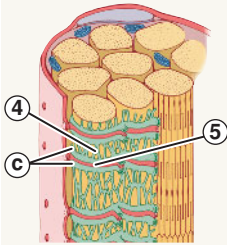
SKELETAL MUSCLE TISSUE

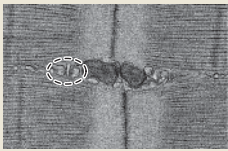
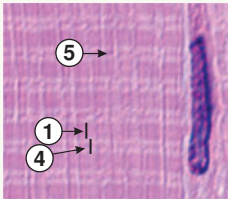
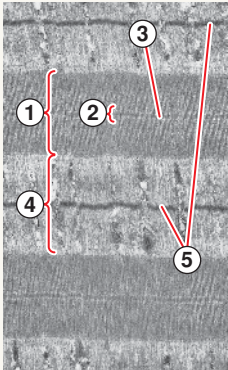
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Organization</i>		
1. Skeletal muscle fiber: Striated, multinucleated muscle cell 2. Endomysium: Thin reticular fibers	 1. Individual contractile cell 2. Structural support for each cell and delivery of small vessels and nerves	1. Throughout the muscle 2. Surround each muscle fiber

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Organization</i>		
3. Fascicle: A bundle of muscle fibers	3. Functional unit that works together	3. Throughout the muscle
4. Perimysium: Connective tissue	4. Bind each fascicle to help it function as a unit, deliver larger vessels and nerves	4. Surround each fascicle
5. Recognizable, named muscles: Formed by a collection of fascicles	5. Work in a coordinated manner to create movements	5. Throughout the body
6. Epimysium: Dense connective tissue	6. Sheath the muscle, help transmit contractile force of the muscle, deliver major vessels and nerves	6. Surround each muscle
<i>Skeletal muscle cell (fiber)</i>		
1. Myofibrils: Thin and long bundles that fill the muscle fiber		1. Throughout sarcoplasm
2. Sarcomere: Contractile unit of the myofibril		2. Line up back to back to form a myofibril

(continued)

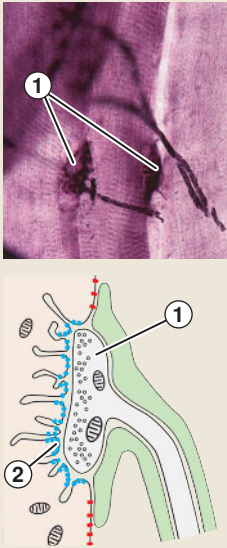
SKELETAL MUSCLE TISSUE (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Skeletal muscle cell (fiber)</i>		
<p>3. Myofilaments: Strands of protein polymers</p> <p>a. Thick filaments: Myosin</p> <p>b. Thin filaments: Actin</p>		<p>3. Interaction between thick and thin filaments produces contraction; overlap between the two filaments creates banding patterns (striations)</p>
<p>4. Sarcoplasmic reticulum: Network of sER surrounds each myofibril</p> <p>c. Terminal cisterna: Dilated ring of sarcoplasmic reticulum</p>		<p>4. Store, release, and reuptake Ca^{2+}</p> <p>c. Between A and I bands</p>
<p>5. Transverse tubules (T tubules): Invagination of sarcoplasmic reticulum</p>	<p>5. Transmit membrane depolarization throughout sarcoplasm, trigger Ca^{2+} release from terminal cisternae</p>	<p>5. Travel through the muscle fiber at A-I junctions</p>

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Triad</i>			
A unit of two terminal cisternae with a T tubule in the middle		Effective depolarization wave transmission and release of Ca^{2+}	A-I junctions
<i>Striations</i>			
Formed by the alternating thick and thin filaments			
1. A band: Dark band		1. Span of thick filaments; areas of overlap with thin filaments on either side	1. Middle portion of sarcomere
2. H band: Less dark band in the middle of A band		2. Portion of A band with only thick filaments	2. Middle portion of A band
3. M line: Faint, thin line in the middle of A band		3. Anchor thick filaments	3. Midline of A band
4. I band: Light band		4. Area with only thin filaments	4. Lateral portion spanning two sarcomeres
5. Z line (Z disc): Dense line in the middle of I band		5. Anchor thin filaments and mark the boundary of sarcomere	5. End margin of each sarcomere, midline of I band

(continued)

SKELETAL MUSCLE TISSUE (continued)

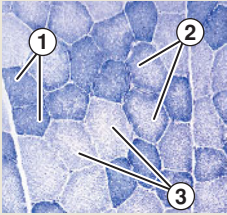
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Neuromuscular junction (motor end plate)</i>		
<p>Site of interaction between:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Motor axon terminal: Highly branched; contains numerous acetylcholine (ACh)-filled vesicles Receptor region on sarcolemma: Shallow depression with many membrane folds (junctional folds) expressing cholinergic receptors for ACh 		<p>Usually in the middle of the muscle fiber but may vary</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In response to action potential, release ACh to the synaptic cleft ACh receptors bind ACh and initiate membrane depolarization wave throughout muscle fiber.

Additional Concepts

- **Motor unit:** A group of skeletal muscle fibers innervated by a single motor neuron that contract together
- **Large motor unit:** A large group of muscle fibers innervated by a single motor neuron that generates a large contractile force but is relatively slow to respond as a whole. Includes postural muscles of the back, thighs, and buttocks
- **Small motor unit:** A small group of muscle fibers innervated by a single motor neuron that generates fine, delicate movements fast. Includes extrinsic eye muscles and muscles that control the fingers
- **Sliding filament model:** Mechanism of contraction in which thin filaments slide on thick filaments toward the M line, shortening each sarcomere of myofibrils to produce contraction of each muscle fiber

- **Muscle contraction process:** Action potential travels down the axon → This triggers release of ACh at neuromuscular junction (NMJ) → ACh binds receptors on sarcolemma at NMJ → Sarcolemma depolarization wave travels through the rest of the cell and T tubules → Terminal cisternae release Ca^{2+} → Ca^{2+} allows interaction of myosin and actin → Adenosine triphosphate (ATP) is used to slide filaments on each other, which → shortens each sarcomere, which → shortens each myofibril → Muscle contraction is generated.

THREE TYPES OF SKELETAL MUSCLE FIBERS

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Type I (red, slow-twitch) fibers</i>		
1. Small diameter; red appearance in vivo due to high myoglobin content; many mitochondria		1. Slow to contract but resistant to fatigue; undergo oxidative phosphorylation to produce maximum ATP
<i>Type IIa (intermediate) fibers</i>		
2. Medium-sized diameter; slightly red due to good amount of myoglobin; many mitochondria; glycogen storage	2. Faster to contract and fairly resistant to fatigue; generate ATP by both oxidative phosphorylation and glycolysis	2. Large amount in mid-distance runners and swimmers
<i>Type IIb (white, fast-twitch) fibers</i>		
3. Large diameter; light pink in vivo due to less myoglobin; fewer mitochondria; large glycogen storage	3. Fast to contract and prone to fatigue; generate ATP rapidly by anaerobic glycolysis. Lactic acid by-products cause fatigue	3. Extraocular muscles, muscles of the fingers; large amount in short-distance runners and weight lifters

MNEMONIC

The type and function of skeletal muscle fibers can be recalled by associating them with the famous fable *The Tortoise and the Hare*.

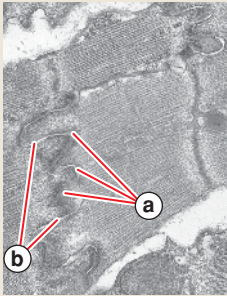
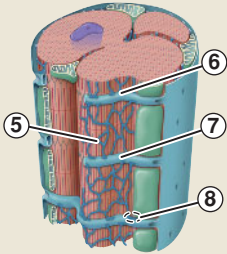
- Type I fibers are like the **tortoise**: Slow moving but steady, and they take first place (type I).
- Type IIb fibers are like the **hare**: Fast, but resting in the middle, and they come in last place (type IIb, the last of the three fibers).
- Type IIa fibers are in between the other two, chronologically. They come in the middle and, hence, are intermediate fibers.

Clinical Significance

- **Rigor mortis**: At the time of death, Ca^{2+} leaks out into sarcolemma \rightarrow Actin and myosin interact \rightarrow Due to lack of ATP, the interaction cannot be separated \rightarrow This results in muscle rigidity.
- **Atrophy**: Decrease in muscle cell volume with the loss of myofibrils as the result of inactivity or loss of motor innervation
- **Myasthenia gravis**: Episodic and progressive muscle weakness commonly as the result of autoimmune antibody binding and blocking ACh receptors at neuromuscular junctions

CARDIAC MUSCLE TISSUE

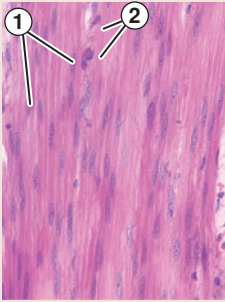
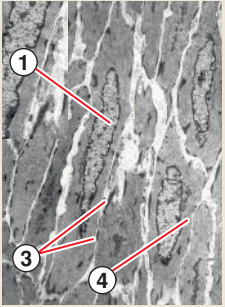
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Cardiac muscle cell (cardiomyocyte)</i>			
1. Single, oval nucleus	<p>A light micrograph of cardiac muscle tissue stained with H&E. The image shows several cardiomyocytes with characteristic striations. Four numbered callouts point to specific features: 1 points to a single, centrally located nucleus; 2 points to the striations (myofibrils); 3 points to clear-staining glycogen vesicles; and 4 points to a dark-staining intercalated disc between two adjacent cells.</p>	1. Regulate cardiomyocyte structure and function	1. Center of the cell
2. Striations: Same organization of bands as skeletal muscle cells		2. Sliding filaments generate contraction.	2. Throughout the cell
3. Glycogen storage: Clear-staining vesicles		3. Store energy	3. Throughout the cell, perinuclear area
4. Intercalated discs: Dark bands between cardiomyocytes		4. Create cardiomyocyte syncytium	4. In between cardiomyocytes

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Cardiac muscle cell (cardiomyocyte)</i>			
<p>a. Transverse portion: Adhesion junctions and desmosomes</p> <p>b. Lateral portion: Gap junctions</p>		<p>a. Adheres cardiomyocytes end to end</p> <p>b. Transmission of macromolecules and ions between cells</p>	<p>a. Portions of the disc perpendicular to long axis of the cell (filaments)</p> <p>b. Portions of the disc parallel to long axis of the cell (filaments)</p>
<p>5. Sarcoplasmic reticulum: Network of sER</p> <p>6. Terminal cisterna: Dilated portions of sarcoplasmic reticulum</p> <p>7. Transverse tubules (T tubules): Invagination of sarcoplasmic reticulum</p> <p>8. Diad: A unit of one terminal cisterna and a T tubule</p>		<p>5-6. Store, release, and reuptake Ca^{2+}</p> <p>7. Transmit membrane depolarization throughout sarcoplasm, trigger Ca^{2+} release from terminal cisternae</p> <p>8. Effective depolarization wave transmission and release of Ca^{2+}</p>	<p>5. Throughout sarcoplasm</p> <p>6. At the level of Z lines</p> <p>7. Travel through the muscle fiber at the level of Z lines</p> <p>8. Level of Z lines</p>

Clinical Significance

- Myocardial infarction (MI):** Injury and cell death at a region of the heart as a result of poor or blocked blood supply. Injured area is replaced by scar tissue rather than new cardiac cells due to their inability to proliferate.

SMOOTH MUSCLE TISSUE

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Smooth muscle cell</i>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Single, elongated nucleus; may appear coiled in contracted cells Homogenous eosinophilic cytoplasm: No striations or bands Dense bodies: A group of proteins on the cytoplasmic side of sarcolemma Gap junctions 	 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Regulate muscle cell structure and function Contain organelles and contractile structures Attach and anchor thin filaments to sarcolemma Allow passage of macromolecules, ions between cells to function as a unit 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Center of the cell in longitudinal axis Throughout the cell Scattered throughout the cytoplasmic side of sarcolemma Between cells

Clinical Significance

- **Leiomyoma:** Benign smooth muscle tumors often arising in the uterus; the most common neoplasm in women
- **Leiomyosarcoma:** Malignant smooth muscle tumors; 10% to 20% of soft tissue tumors

Additional Concepts

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

Longitudinal Sections	Smooth Muscle	Dense Regular Connective Tissue	Nerve
Nuclei	Mixture of euchromatin and heterochromatin. Some are spiraled. Each is located within smooth muscle cells.	Very thin, heterochromatic nuclei of fibrocytes—seemingly in between thick collagen fibers	Oval, shorter, rounder nuclei are located in the periphery of the Schwann cells.
Cytoplasm	Relatively uniform in size and shape	Extremely thin, almost indiscernible	Appears segmental and rounded with a thin line (axon) running in the middle
Cellularity	Most dense	Least dense	Intermediate
Staining	Generally eosinophilic due to abundant cytoplasm	Intensely eosinophilic due to collagen fibers	Irregular staining pattern, mixture of thin lines (axon) and clear staining area in the vicinity

Neural Tissue

5

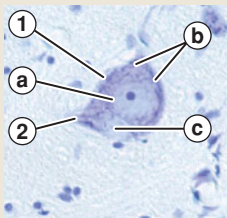
INTRODUCTION

Neural tissue is one of the four basic tissue types composed mostly of cells, neurons forming the parenchyma, and diverse glial cells forming the stroma. Collectively, neural tissues form a complex chemical network throughout the body and allow it to sense and respond to stimuli and perform movements in a coordinated manner. Neural tissues are anatomically organized into the central nervous system (CNS), consisting of the brain and the spinal cord, and the peripheral nervous system (PNS), composed of all other neural tissues in the body. Functionally, neural tissues are divided into the somatic nervous system (SNS)—those under voluntary control—and the autonomic nervous system (ANS)—those under involuntary control. The autonomic nervous system is further divided into the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems.

NEURAL TISSUE

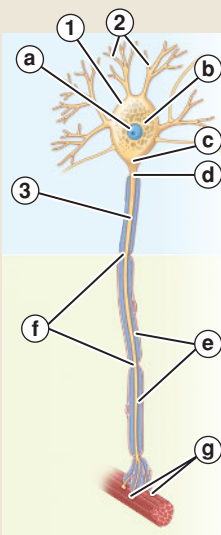
NEURAL TISSUE COMPONENTS

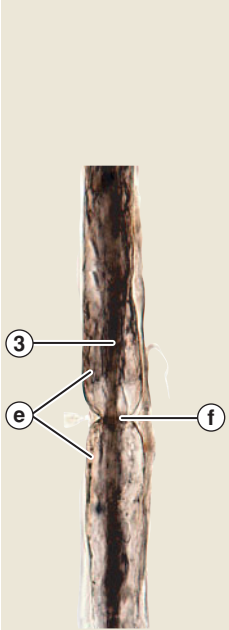
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Neurons (neural cells)</i>		
<p>Structural and functional unit of the nervous system. Diverse in size and shape</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Cell body (perikaryon/soma): biggest portion of the neuron	<p>Sense and respond to stimuli and initiate movements</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Production of neurotransmitters, maintenance of neuron structural integrity	<p>Throughout the body</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Depends on the type of neuron: One end of multipolar neuron, midportion of bipolar neuron, varying areas in unipolar neuron



(continued)

NEURAL TISSUE COMPONENTS (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Neurons (neural cells)</i>		
<p>a. Nucleus: Large, round, euchromatic, distinct nucleolus</p> <p>b. Nissl bodies: Stacks of rough endoplasmic reticulum (rER), observed as basophilic spots in cytoplasm</p> <p>c. Axon hillock: Triangular, pale-staining area on cell body</p> <p>2. Dendrites: Branched projections from cell body</p> <p>3. Axon: Single, often very long cellular projection from cell body</p>	 <p>a. Regulation of transcription and neuron function</p> <p>b. Translation, neurotransmitter production</p> <p>c. Origination of axon</p> <p>2. Receiving information from other neurons or external environment and relaying it to cell body</p> <p>3. Transduction of action potential from the cell body to another neuron or to an effector cell, transport of vesicles and organelles between cell body and axon terminals</p>	<p>a. Central portion of the cell body</p> <p>b. Throughout the cell body</p> <p>c. One pole of the cell body</p> <p>2. Various points of the cell body</p> <p>3. Long, single projection from the cell body</p>

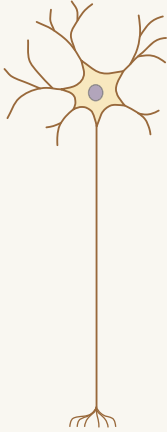
Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Neurons (neural cells)</i>			
<p>d. Initial segment: The first portion out of axon hillock</p> <p>e. Myelin sheath: Clear-staining glial cell (oligodendrocytes in CNS, Schwann cells in PNS) wrapping around axon at regular intervals</p> <p>f. Node of Ranvier: Unmyelinated segments of axon between myelin sheaths</p> <p>g. Axon terminals (boutons): Branched, dilated ends of an axon</p>	 <p>The image shows a longitudinal section of a neuron. A dark, cylindrical axon is visible, surrounded by a lighter, segmented myelin sheath. A gap in the myelin sheath, the node of Ranvier, is clearly visible. Labels 'd', 'e', and 'f' are placed at different points along the axon to indicate specific structures.</p>	<p>d. Action potential generation</p> <p>e. Axon insulation to ensure quicker transmission of action potential</p> <p>f. Action potential propagation</p> <p>g. Storage of neurotransmitter-filled vesicles, release and reuptake of neurotransmitters into and from the synaptic cleft</p>	<p>d. Between the axon hillock and the first myelin sheath</p> <p>e. Throughout the length of myelinated axons</p> <p>f. In between two myelin sheaths</p> <p>g. Ends of the axon, forming synapses with other neurons or effector cells/organs</p>

(continued)

NEURAL TISSUE COMPONENTS (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Three types of neurons based on morphology</i>		
<p>1. Multipolar neuron: Large cell body, many dendrites, a single axon</p>	<p>1. Relay motor information or form a part of integrating network with other neurons</p>	<p>1. Numerous, found throughout neural tissue</p>
<p>2. Bipolar neuron: Only two cellular processes from a fusiform cell body: One dendrite and one axon</p>	<p>2. Relay special sensory information to the CNS</p>	<p>2. Rare, found in special sensory organs such as retina and inner ear</p>
<p>3. Unipolar (pseudounipolar neuron): A spherical cell body that has a single cellular process that immediately branches into two long processes, one traveling to the CNS, the other to the periphery</p>	<p>3. Relay sensory information from the periphery to the CNS</p>	<p>3. Numerous, found throughout neural tissue. Collection of unipolar neuron cell bodies are found in spinal ganglia and cranial nerve ganglia</p>

①

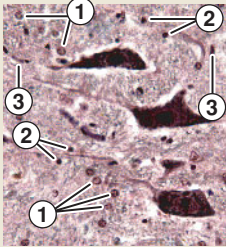


②



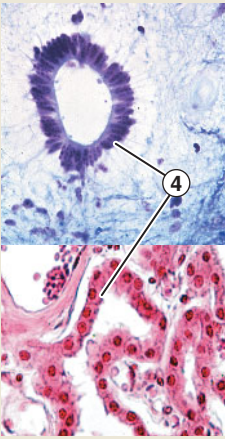
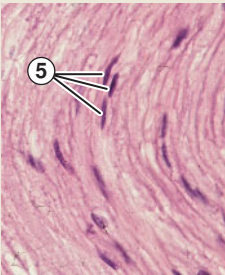

③



Structure		Function	Location
<i>Glial cells</i>			
<p>Group of non-conducting cells that together function as the supporting component of the neural tissue</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Astrocytes: Highly branched; indistinct cell boundaries; small, rounded nuclei with mixture of heterochromatin and euchromatin (“salt and pepper” pattern) 2. Oligodendrocytes: Indistinct cell boundaries; smallest, round, heterochromatic nuclei 3. Microglia: Indistinct cell boundaries; elongated, heterochromatic nuclei 		<p>Physical support, insulation of the neurons and synaptic clefts, repair of injured neurons, aid in metabolic exchange</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Providing physical support, participating in blood-brain barrier, taking part in metabolic exchange between neurons and vasculature 2. Myelinating axons of the CNS; single cell can myelinate more than one axon 3. Mediating neuroimmune reactions, phagocytosis of pathogens and cell debris 	<p>Found throughout CNS and PNS</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Only in the CNS; most numerous glial cells in the CNS 2. Only in the CNS 3. Only in the CNS

(continued)

NEURAL TISSUE COMPONENTS (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Glial cells</i>			
4. Ependymal cells: Cuboidal cells, clear cytoplasm, rounded nuclei, form simple cuboidal epithelia		4. Lining the ventricles and central canal of the CNS, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) production	4. Only in the CNS: Lining of the ventricles, choroid plexuses, lining of the central canal
5. Schwann cells: Each wrap around a single segment of an axon, oval to elongated nuclei in the cell periphery		5. Myelinating axons in the PNS	5. Only in the PNS
6. Satellite cells: Indistinct cell boundaries; small, round, condensed nuclei		6. Supporting neuronal structures in the PNS	6. Only in the PNS; surrounding neuron cell bodies in ganglia

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Meninges (coverings)</i>			
Three layers of membranes that cover the CNS		Protect, anchor, and cushion brain and spinal cord	Surrounding brain and spinal cord
1. Dura mater: Dense connective tissue		1. Protecting and anchoring the brain and spinal cord	1. Outermost covering
a. Epidural space: Potential space above the dura		a. Potential space, normally closed off in the skull and filled with fatty tissue in the vertebral column	a. Between dura mater and skull in the head; between dura mater and vertebrae in the vertebral column
b. Subdural space: Potential space below the dura		b. Potential space, normally closed off	b. Between dura and arachnoid mater
2. Arachnoid mater: Delicate sheet of loose connective tissue		2. Providing nutritional support and limited protection	2. Deep to and in contact with the inside of dura mater
c. Arachnoid trabeculae: Web-like extensions of arachnoid	c. Providing limited structural support to the subarachnoid space and vasculature	c. Subarachnoid space	

(continued)

NEURAL TISSUE COMPONENTS (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Meninges (coverings)</i>		
d. Subarachnoid space: Actual space, filled with CSF	d. Providing cushioning mechanism and vascular supply for brain and spinal cord	d. Between arachnoid and pia mater
3. Pia mater: Delicate and thin connective tissue sheet	3. Lining the outermost layer of the CNS	3. Outermost layer of the brain and spinal cord



Additional Concepts

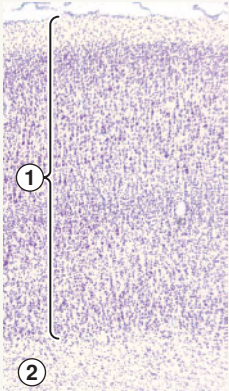
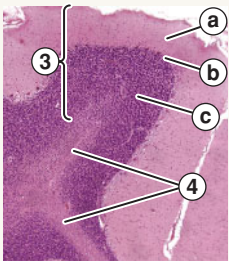
- **Three types of neurons based on function**
 - **Motor neurons:** Most are multipolar neurons that synapse with muscle cells to trigger contraction.
 - **Sensory neurons:** Most are unipolar neurons that carry sensory input from the periphery to the CNS. Cell bodies of the unipolar sensory neurons are accumulated in various ganglia throughout the body. Special sensory neurons of the retina and inner ear are bipolar neurons.
 - **Interneurons:** Multipolar neurons that integrate input from other neurons and relay the overall signal onto the next neuron.
- **Oligodendrocytes versus Schwann cells:** Both myelinate axons and perform similar functions; however, oligodendrocytes are only found in the CNS, whereas Schwann cells are only found in the PNS. A single Schwann cell can myelinate a small segment of a single axon in the PNS, whereas a single oligodendrocyte can myelinate small segments of more than one axon through its multiple cytoplasmic extensions.

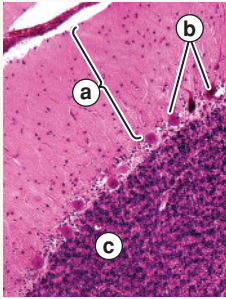
CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM: BRAIN

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
<p>1. Cortex: Gray matter; abundant neuronal cell bodies cause gray hue</p> <p>2. Medulla: White matter; abundant axons, most of which are myelinated; give off glistening white hue</p> <p>3. Nuclei: Areas/regions within medulla with a collection of neuronal cell bodies (gray matter)</p> <p>4. Tracts: Areas/regions within medulla where white matter makes striations or distinct lines as a collection of axons travel together</p>		<p>1. Site of synapse; house neuronal cell bodies, dendrites, axons, and glia</p> <p>2. Conduction of neural impulse throughout axon fiber; house nuclei and tracts</p> <p>3. Site of synapse and neural impulse integration</p> <p>4. House bundles of axons and associated glia</p>	<p>1. Outer layer of the brain</p> <p>2. Inner layer of the brain</p> <p>3. Scattered throughout medulla: Basal ganglia, lateral and medial geniculate nuclei, etc.</p> <p>4. Throughout medulla: Corpus callosum, internal capsule, etc.</p>

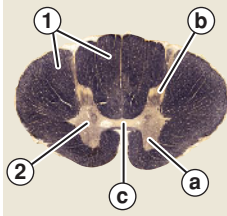
(continued)

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM: BRAIN (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
<p>1. Cerebral cortex: Different types of neuronal cell bodies are organized into several recognizable layers; depending on the lobe or region of the brain, the pattern of the layers may differ</p>		<p>1. Site of synapse, integration of chemical signals and either inhibition or propagation of neural impulse</p>
<p>2. Cerebral medulla: Mostly myelinated axons and glial cells</p>		<p>2. Conduction of neural impulse throughout axon fibers</p>
<p>3. Cerebellar cortex: Gray matter composed of three distinct layers of neuronal cell bodies</p>		<p>3. Site of synapse, integration of chemical signals and regulation of coordinated body movements and balance</p>
<p>a. Molecular layer: Relatively small neuronal cell bodies evenly distributed among glia</p>		<p>3. Outer, highly convoluted layer of the cerebellum</p>

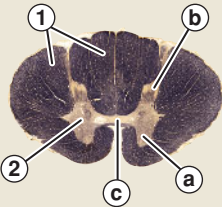
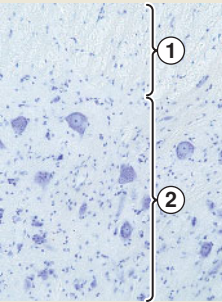
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
<p>b. Purkinje cell layer: Single layer of large pyramidal, multipolar neurons</p> <p>c. Granular layer: Densely distributed smallest neuronal cell bodies</p>		<p>b. Between molecular and granular layers</p> <p>c. Deepest layer of the cerebellar cortex</p>
<p>4. Cerebellar medulla: Mostly myelinated axons that form a thin, branched pattern of white matter (arbor vitae)</p>		<p>4. Conduction of neural impulse throughout axon fibers</p>

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM: SPINAL CORD

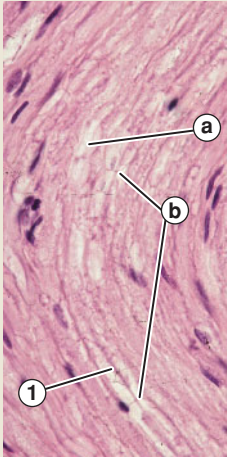
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
<p>1. Cortex: White matter; axon bundles and glia forming various tracts</p>		<p>1. Conduction of neural impulse throughout axon fibers</p>
		<p>1. Outer layer of the spinal cord, immediately below pia mater</p>

(continued)

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM: SPINAL CORD (continued)

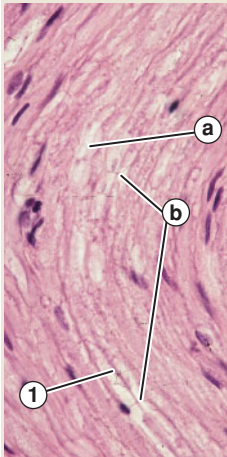
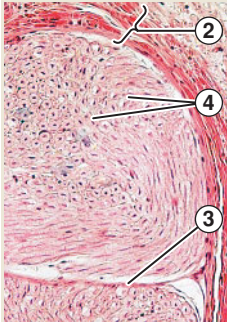
Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
<p>2. Medulla: Butterfly-shaped gray matter, neuronal cell bodies and glia</p> <p>a. Ventral horn: Anterior swelling of medulla containing cell bodies of motor neurons and glia</p> <p>b. Dorsal horn: Cell bodies of interneurons; efferent axons of the sensory neurons and glia</p> <p>c. Central canal: Narrow tubule filled with CSF and lined with ependymal cells</p>	 	<p>2. Site of synapse, integration of chemical signals and either inhibition or propagation of neural impulse</p> <p>a. Neural integration, inhibition or propagation of action potential that results in muscle contraction</p> <p>b. Sensory neural integration, inhibition or propagation of action potential</p> <p>c. Contain small amount of CSF</p>	<p>2. Inner, central portion of the spinal cord</p> <p>a. Anterior arms of the medulla</p> <p>b. Posterior arms of the medulla</p> <p>c. Center of the medulla</p>

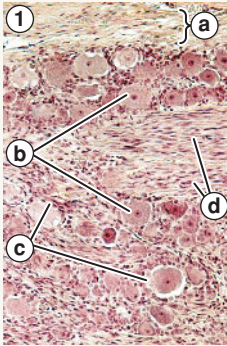
PERIPHERAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Nerves</i>			
<p>Collection of axons (myelinated or nonmyelinated) outside of the CNS, surrounded and organized by connective tissue sheath</p> <p>1. Axons: Thin, long, delicate strands seen best in the middle of myelin sheaths</p> <p>a. Myelinated axons: In longitudinal section, appear as chains of clear-staining area, each with an axon running in the middle. In cross section, appear as clear-staining circles, each with a central spot (axon)</p>		<p>Conduct neural signals to and from the CNS</p> <p>1. Conduct action potentials</p> <p>a. Myelin sheath insulates the axons to allow faster conduction of action potential</p>	<p>Throughout the body</p> <p>1. Throughout the nerve</p> <p>a. Throughout the nerve</p>

(continued)

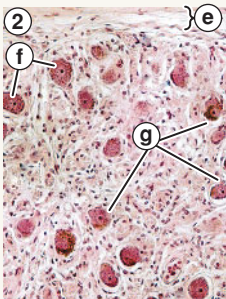
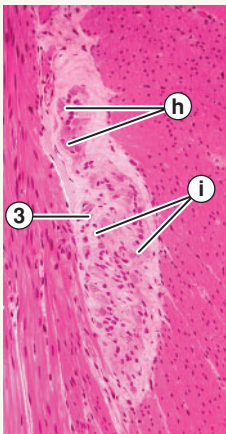
PERIPHERAL NERVOUS SYSTEM (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Nerves</i>		
<p>b. Node of Ranvier: Portion of the myelinated axon, not covered by a Schwann cell, demarcated by a thin line and small indentation in between two myelin sheaths</p> <p>c. Nonmyelinated axons: Collection of thread-like axons without abundant clear-staining areas. Streaks of darker-staining regions with crowded Schwann cell nuclei</p> <p>Surrounded by:</p> <p>2. Epineurium: Dense connective tissue around the entire nerve</p> <p>3. Perineurium: Connective tissue around a bundle of axons (fascicles)</p>	  <p>b. Propagates action potential at regular intervals throughout the length of the axon</p> <p>c. Noninsulated axons conduct action potential at a slower rate</p> <p>2. Surround and protect the nerve, deliver vascular supply</p> <p>3. Surround a fascicle (bundle) of axons, deliver vascular supply</p>	<p>b. On myelinated axons</p> <p>c. Throughout the nerve</p> <p>2. Outermost layer of the nerve</p> <p>3. Extend from the epineurium into the nerve</p>

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Nerves</i>			
4. Endoneurium: Delicate basement membrane around each axon or Schwann cell		4. Surround and support each axon and/or myelin sheath of an axon	4. In contact with axons and myelin sheaths
<i>Ganglia</i>			
Collection of neuronal cell bodies outside of the CNS		Regulate and maintain the neuronal cell integrity in the PNS	Throughout the body outside of the CNS
<p>1. Spinal ganglia (dorsal root/sensory ganglia)</p> <p>a. Capsule: Dense connective tissue, continuation of the dura mater</p> <p>b. Unipolar neuronal cell bodies of varying size; arranged in clumps</p> <p>c. Satellite cells: Glial cells with indistinct cell body and small, round nuclei; resemble astrocytes</p> <p>d. Axon bundles: Form strands that resemble tracts</p>		<p>1. Contain cell bodies of the sensory unipolar neurons</p> <p>a. Surround and protect the ganglia</p> <p>b. Maintain and regulate neuron function</p> <p>c. Support neurons in the PNS</p> <p>d. Conduct action potential</p>	<p>1. Bilateral swellings on either side of the spinal cord</p> <p>a. Outermost layer</p> <p>b. Throughout ganglia arranged in clumps</p> <p>c. Surrounding neuronal cell bodies and throughout ganglia</p> <p>d. Randomly traverse the ganglia</p>

(continued)

PERIPHERAL NERVOUS SYSTEM (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Ganglia</i>			
2. Sympathetic ganglia		2. Contain cell bodies of the postsynaptic neuron cell bodies e. Surround and protect the ganglia f. Receive and integrate sympathetic signal	2. In bilateral chain lateral to vertebral column e. Outermost layer f. Throughout ganglia, evenly distributed
e. Capsule: Dense connective tissue		g. Support neurons in the PNS	g. Throughout ganglia
f. Postsynaptic multipolar neuron cell bodies; evenly sized and distributed			
g. Satellite cells: Surround cell body but not as evenly positioned			
3. Parasympathetic (enteric) ganglia: Small, pale-staining oval structures with no distinct capsule		3. Contain cell bodies of the post-synaptic neurons	3. Close to and within visceral organs
h. Postsynaptic neuron cell bodies: Relatively large and triangular		h. Receive and integrate parasympathetic signal	h. Scattered throughout ganglia

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Ganglia</i>		
i. Satellite cells: Do not surround cell bodies at regular intervals	i. Support the neuron	i. Scattered randomly throughout ganglia

Additional Concepts

- **Synapse:** Site of communicational contact between two neurons or a neuron and an effector cell. A synapse is composed of a presynaptic axon terminal, a synaptic cleft, and a postsynaptic dendrite or effector cell (FIG. 5-1). When an action potential reaches the axon terminal, the membrane calcium channels open to allow the influx of Ca^{2+} into the axon terminal, triggering the secretory vesicles to fuse with the membrane and release the neurotransmitters into the synaptic cleft. Neurotransmitters then bind the receptors on the postsynaptic cell membrane and either initiate or inhibit the generation of action potential in the postsynaptic neuron.

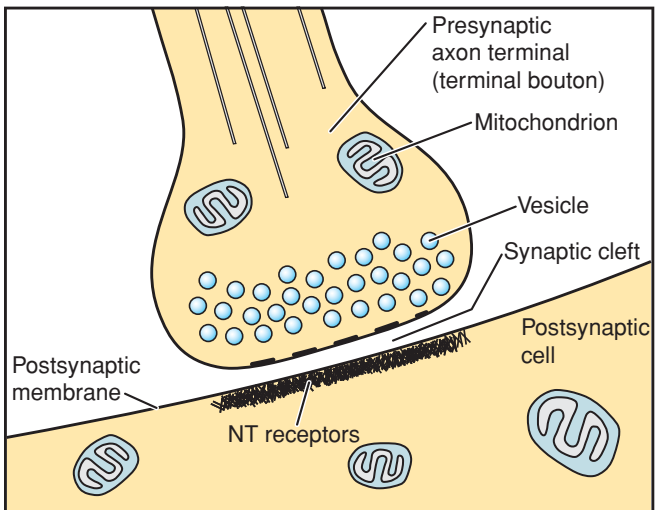


Figure 5-1. Synapse. (From Cui D. *Atlas of Histology with Functional and Clinical Correlations*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2009:119.)

- **Removal of neurotransmitters from the synaptic cleft:** Achieved by (1) the reuptake (endocytosis) by the presynaptic axon terminal, (2) degradation of neurotransmitters by the enzymes in the synaptic cleft, and (3) endocytosis and degradation by the postsynaptic cell. Without swift removal of the neurotransmitters, the postsynaptic cell may continue to be inhibited or continue to fire action potentials, resulting in unwanted effects downstream.
- **Blood-brain barrier:** Contains the following three components:
 - **Continuous capillaries:** Endothelial tight junctions create a seal that limits paracellular traffic. Gas and small lipid-soluble substances can pass through the cell, and select small molecules are transported through the endothelial cells. Endothelial cells in the nervous system express abundant receptors for essential molecules such as glucose, amino acids, and vitamins.
 - **Astrocyte end-foot processes** coat the outside of the capillaries and contribute to maintain endothelial cells and their tight junction integrity.
 - **Basement membrane** between the endothelium and the astrocyte foot processes
- **Unmyelinated axons** are still associated and supported by the oligodendrocytes in the CNS and by the Schwann cells in the PNS. More than one axon invaginates into nearby glial cells; thus, portions of the axons are embedded and surrounded by the glial cell membranes (FIG. 5-2).

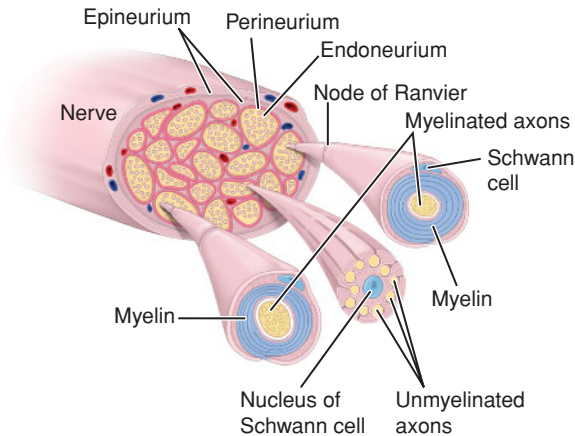


Figure 5-2. Myelinated and unmyelinated axons of the nerve. (From Ross M, Pawlina W. *Histology: A Text and Atlas*. 6th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2009:356.)

- Response to neuronal injury in the PNS:** Portion of the axon distal to the injury degenerates (anterograde/Wallerian degeneration). Schwann cells surrounding the degenerating axons break down the myelin sheath, divide, and rearrange into a cellular column (band of Büngner). Macrophages clear the myelin debris. The injured neuron cell body undergoes chromatolysis, characterized by swelling, a reduction in Nissl bodies, and peripheral positioning of the nucleus. The regenerating axon branches into numerous sprouts (neurites). Once a neurite makes contact with a band of Büngner, it grows down its length and re-establishes contact with the postsynaptic cell. If neurites fail to make contact with the band of Büngner, the band eventually degenerates and reinnervation is not established (FIG. 5-3).

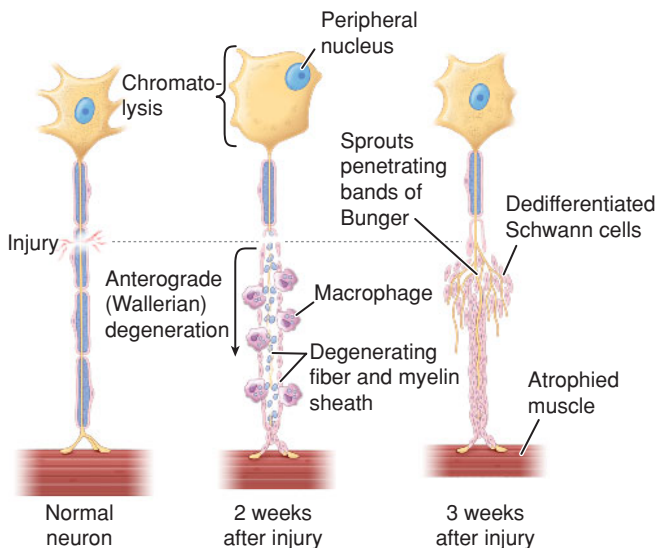


Figure 5-3. Response to neuronal injury in the peripheral nervous system. (From Ross M, Pawlina W. *Histology: A Text and Atlas*. 6th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2009:387.)

Clinical Significance

- **Pharmaceutical agents:** A number of pharmaceutical agents target the components of the synaptic cleft to either prolong or reduce the effects of neurotransmitters.
- **Inhibitors of neurotransmitter reuptake:** Prolong the presence of neurotransmitters in the synaptic cleft, thus increasing the effects of neurotransmitters in the postsynaptic cells
- **Inhibitors of enzymes that degrade neurotransmitters:** Increase the available pool of neurotransmitters, thus prolonging the effects of neurotransmitters in the postsynaptic cells

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	Dense Regular Connective Tissue	Nerve	Smooth Muscle
Cells	Flattened, thread-like fibrocyte nuclei are seen throughout, but are not abundant	Oval nuclei of Schwann cells seen around the clear-staining myelin sheaths, and thread-like axon fibers observed in the middle	Looks much more cell dense with oval, sometimes spiraling nuclei in the middle of the cells and close to each other
Staining pattern	Intensely eosinophilic with thick bundles of collagen fibers dominating the visual field	Uneven staining with pale areas due to myelin sheaths and more eosinophilic areas where axons and Schwann cells are crowded	Relatively homogenous, basophilic staining pattern due to smooth muscle cell cytoplasm

Circulatory System

6

INTRODUCTION

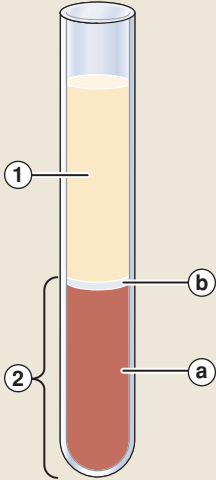
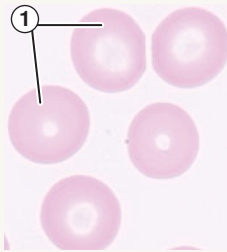
The circulatory system is composed of the heart and series of vessels that transport blood and lymph throughout the body. Blood is a specialized connective tissue composed of cells suspended in a large volume of fluid extracellular matrix. The four-chambered human heart is specialized to receive blood returning from the body and then to pump it to either the lungs or the rest of the body in a coordinated manner, with little to no backflow. Blood vascular histology varies depending on its function and location. The vessels close to the heart are designed to withstand large and repeatedly changing blood pressure and those much farther away are specialized to allow efficient exchange of gas and other molecules. The hydrostatic pressure and the composition of the blood within the vasculature play a critical role in maintaining fluid homeostasis throughout the body.



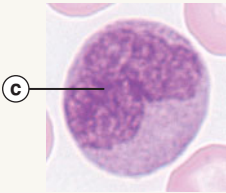
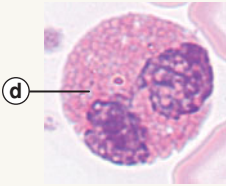
THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

BLOOD			
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Composition</i>			
Specialized connective tissue		Delivery of nutrients and O ₂ , transport of waste and CO ₂ , hormone delivery, facilitation of coagulation and immune response by delivery of white blood cells and platelets	Throughout the body within the heart and blood vessels

(continued)


BLOOD (continued)

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Composition</i>			
<p>1. Plasma: Fluid extracellular matrix, 55% volume of blood</p> <p>2. Formed elements: Cells and platelets, 45% volume of blood</p> <p>a. Hematocrit: Majority of formed element, the volume of erythrocytes in a blood sample</p> <p>b. Buffy coat: 1% of blood volume, narrow, gray layer on top of hematocrit composed of leukocytes and platelets</p>		<p>1. Functioning as solvent, buffering medium; maintaining osmotic pressure</p> <p>2. Exchange of O₂, CO₂; participation in immune response and clotting</p>	<p>1. Liquid supernatant</p> <p>2. Sediment</p> <p>a. Bottom layer</p> <p>b. On top of the hematocrit layer</p>
<i>Formed elements</i>			
<p>1. Red blood cells (erythrocytes): Red, biconcave, anucleate cells, 7.8 μm in diameter</p>		<p>1. Exchange of O₂ and CO₂</p> <p>Suspended throughout plasma</p>	

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Formed elements</i>		
<p>2. White blood cells: Nucleated cells of varying size and shape</p> <p>a. Neutrophils: Lobed nuclei (three to four lobes), slightly granular cytoplasm</p> 	<p>2. Participation in immune surveillance and response</p> <p>a. Responding to acute injury or infection, moving into the affected site, phagocytosis of pathogens or debris</p>	
<p>b. Lymphocytes: Small, spherical cells with spherical to slightly indented, heterochromatic nuclei; scant, clear cytoplasm</p> 	<p>b. Responding to chronic injury or infection by engaging in adaptive immune response</p>	
<p>c. Monocytes: Larger cells; oval to kidney bean-shaped nuclei; larger, agranular cytoplasm</p> 	<p>c. Responding to injury or infection by moving into the affected site and differentiating into macrophages</p>	
<p>d. Eosinophils: Bilobed nuclei, eosinophilic granule-filled cytoplasm</p> 	<p>d. Responding to allergens, parasitic infections, and chronic inflammation</p>	

(continued)

BLOOD (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Formed elements</i>		
<p>e. Basophils: Lobed nuclei, basophilic granule-filled cytoplasm</p> <p>3. Platelets (thrombocytes): Small, anucleate cell fragments</p>		<p>e. Releasing of vasoactive agents</p> <p>3. Blood clot formation and repair of injury</p>

Additional Concepts

- **Hematocrit:** Volume of packed erythrocytes in a blood sample. Normal range is 39% to 50% in males and 35% to 45% in females.
- **Shape of the erythrocyte:** Maintained by a variety membrane proteins (FIG. 6-1).
 - **Integral membrane proteins:** Embedded within the phospholipid bilayer membrane and function as the sites of attachments for peripheral membrane proteins. The extracellular domains are glycosylated, which contributes to blood group antigen specification.
 - **Peripheral membrane proteins:** Associated with the inner surface of the phospholipid bilayer membrane that forms a meshwork that holds the unique biconcave shape of the erythrocytes while providing it with a level of flexibility.
- **Histologic ruler:** Due to uniform size and abundant presence throughout the body, erythrocytes serve as a useful marker for estimating relative size of the cells and other structures in a tissue.
- **Granulocytes versus agranulocytes**
 - Granulocytes contain specific granules in addition to lysosomes in the cytoplasm and include neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils.

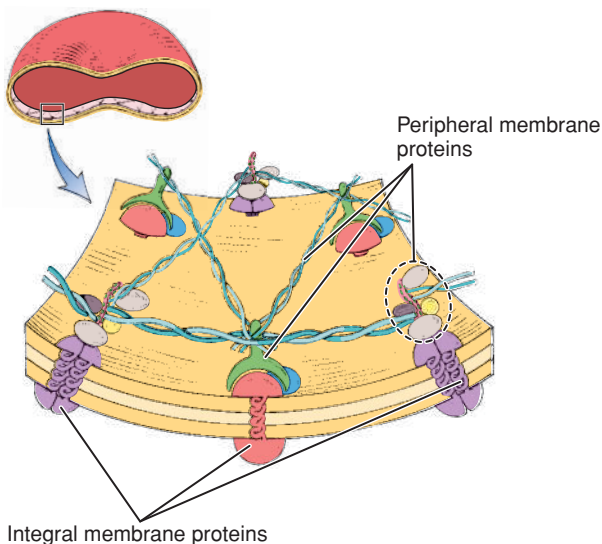


Figure 6-1. Proteins that maintain shape and function of erythrocytes. (From Ross MH, Pawlina W. *Histology: A Text and Atlas*. 6th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2009:272.)

- Agranulocytes do not have specific granules in the cytoplasm and include lymphocytes and monocytes. Lysosomes are present in agranulocytes; however, they do not present as particularly well-staining granules. Hence, the cells appear to be agranular.
- **Three types of lymphocytes:** B lymphocytes, T lymphocytes, and natural killer cells perform different functions in the immune system but are indistinguishable from each other on regular staining.

Clinical Significance

- **Anemia:** Reduced hematocrit. A variety of conditions may cause anemia such as internal or external bleeding or any condition that reduces erythropoiesis.
- **Sickle cell anemia:** Most common cause of sickle cell anemia is a single amino acid change from glutamic acid to valine in the β -globin subunit of hemoglobin. Under stressful conditions such as acute or chronic infection and increased oxygen demand, mutated hemoglobins coalesce and alter the shape of the red blood cells into sickle shape. Sickle cells are less flexible and hence

easily block narrow capillaries, causing tissue injury and necrosis downstream, which are also associated with a significant amount of pain. Sickle cells have shorter life spans than regular erythrocytes as they are easily trapped and destroyed in the spleen and other sites; hence, patients often present with anemia.

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	Lymphocytes	Monocytes
Size	Most lymphocytes are small and closer to the size of erythrocytes	Large cells
Nuclei	Appear more homogenously heterochromatic, usually spherical, may contain a small indentation	Appear slightly more "thready" with a mix of euchromatic and heterochromatic areas, often contain small to large indentations and may appear kidney bean shaped
Cytoplasm	Scant cytoplasm with clear to blue hue, form a thin ring around the nucleus	Good amount of cytoplasm, slightly more eosinophilic and dusty appearance

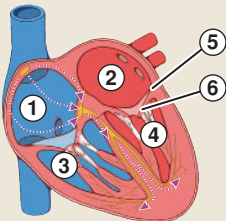
MNEMONIC

Never Let Monkeys Eat Bananas

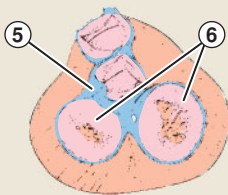
This phrase corresponds to the types of white blood cells in peripheral blood, in order of most to least abundant:

Neutrophils > **L**ymphocytes > **M**onocytes > **E**osinophils > **B**asophils

HEART

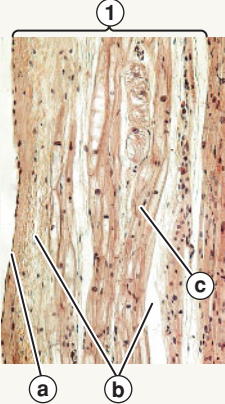
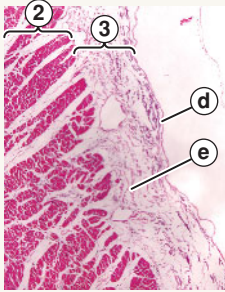
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
1. Right atrium: Thin-walled chamber; smooth glistening lining on dorsal side; triangular auricle with pectinate muscles on lateral, anterior side		1. Receiving deoxygenated blood from the systemic circulation and pumping it to the right ventricle 1. Right upper chamber

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
2. Left atrium: Thin-walled chamber with mostly smooth, glistening lining; thin, long auricle with pectinate muscles on anterior side	2. Receiving oxygenated blood from the lungs and channeling it to the left ventricle	2. Left upper chamber
3. Right ventricle: Relatively thin but muscular chamber, elaborate trabeculae carinae and papillary muscles	3. Receiving blood from the right atrium and pumping it to the lungs	3. Right lower chamber
4. Left ventricle: Thick muscular chamber, trabeculae carinae and papillary muscles	4. Receiving blood from the left atrium and pumping it to the rest of the body	4. Left lower chamber
5. Fibroskeleton: Dense connective tissue	5. Physically blocking transduction of action potential between atria and ventricles, anchoring cardiac muscles and valves	5. Between atria and ventricles, surrounding each of the four main entry and exit orifices
6. Valves: Fibrous flaps	6. Preventing regurgitation of blood during contraction	6. Within atrioventricular orifices



(continued)

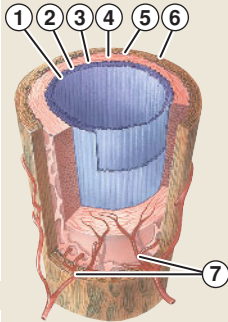
HEART (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
<p>1. Endocardium: Thin layer of connective tissue in contact with blood in the lumen</p> <p>a. Endothelium: Simple squamous epithelium</p> <p>b. Subendocardial layer: Connective tissues, scattered smooth muscle cells</p> <p>c. Purkinje fibers: Modified cardiomyocytes</p>		<p>1. Lining and supporting the lumen of the heart</p> <p>a. Lining the lumen; regulating permeability, blood flow; producing anticoagulants</p> <p>b. Cushioning and supporting endothelium</p> <p>c. Conducting action potential</p>	<p>1. Innermost layer</p> <p>a. In contact with blood</p> <p>b. Deep to endothelium</p> <p>c. Within subendocardial layer</p>
<p>2. Myocardium: Cardiac muscle fibers</p> <p>3. Epicardium: Same as visceral layer of pericardium</p> <p>d. Mesothelium: Simple squamous epithelium</p>		<p>2. Contracting to pump blood throughout the body</p> <p>3. Lining and supporting the outside of the heart</p> <p>d. Production of serous fluid</p>	<p>2. Middle layer of the heart</p> <p>3. Outer layer of the heart</p> <p>d. Outermost layer, in contact with pericardial fluid</p>

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
e. Subepicardial connective tissue: Loose and adipose connective tissues	e. Support, protection, insulation of the heart	e. Between mesothelium and myocardium

GENERAL ORGANIZATION OF BLOOD VESSELS

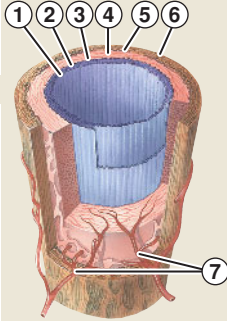
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Tunica intima</i>		
1. Endothelium: Simple squamous epithelium	1. Lining the lumen; regulation of permeability, blood flow; production of anticoagulants	1. Innermost layer, in contact with blood
2. Subendothelial layer: Loose connective tissue	2. Cushioning and supporting endothelium	2. Deep to endothelium
3. Internal elastic lamina: Thin layer of elastic fibers	3. Providing limited elasticity and structural support	3. Outermost layer of the tunica intima
<i>Tunica media</i>		
4. Smooth muscle layer: Varies in thickness and stromal elastic fiber content	4. Contracting to regulate blood pressure and volume of blood passing through	4. Between internal and external elastic lamellae



(continued)

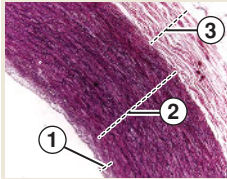
GENERAL ORGANIZATION OF BLOOD VESSELS (continued)

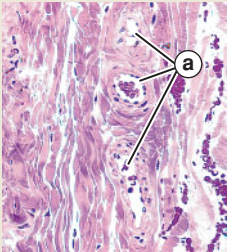
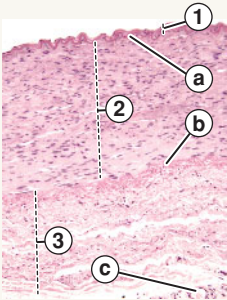
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Tunica media</i>		
5. External elastic lamina: Thin layer of elastic fibers	5. Providing limited elasticity and structural support	5. Between smooth muscle layer and tunica adventitia
<i>Tunica adventitia</i>		
6. Adventitia layer: Connective tissue	6. Providing structural support, anchoring the vessel to the surrounding tissues	6. Outermost layer of vessels
7. Vasa vasorum: Small blood vessels	7. Delivery of vascular supply to the outer wall of the vessel	7. Throughout tunica adventitia



ARTERIES

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Elastic (large) arteries</i>		
1. Thick tunica intima: Relatively thick	1. Lining and protecting the lumen 2. Allowing distension and recoil of the vessel to accommodate repeated fluctuation of blood pressure, ensuring steady flow of blood	Aorta and other large branches off of the aorta
2. Thick tunica media with abundant elastic fibers (elastic connective tissue)		



Structure		Function	Location
<i>Elastic (large) arteries</i>			
<p>3. Relatively thin tunica adventitia (one-quarter to one-half the thickness of tunica media)</p> <p>a. Abundant vasa vasorum: Small blood vessels</p> <p>* Indistinct internal and external elastic laminae</p>		<p>3. Providing support and protection</p> <p>a. Delivery of vascular supply to the outer wall</p>	
<i>Muscular arteries</i>			
<p>1. Thinner tunica intima</p> <p>a. Distinct internal elastic lamina</p> <p>2. Thick tunica media: Mostly smooth muscle tissue</p> <p>b. Distinct external elastic lamina</p> <p>3. Tunica adventitia approximately the same thickness as tunica media</p> <p>c. Vasa vasorum: Small blood vessels</p>		<p>1. Lining and protecting the lumen</p> <p>a. Providing elasticity and structural support to tunica intima</p> <p>2. Contracting to maintain blood pressure</p> <p>b. Providing elasticity</p> <p>3. Providing support and protection</p> <p>c. Delivery of vascular supply to the outer wall</p>	<p>Distal arteries: Include splenic, renal, suprarenal, radial, and ulnar arteries</p>


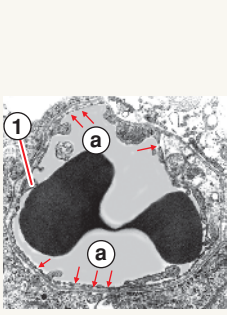
(continued)

ARTERIES (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Small arteries</i>			
1. Thin tunica intima a. Distinct internal elastic lamina 2. Tunica media with three to eight layers of smooth muscle cells 3. Thinner tunica adventitia * Indistinct external elastic lamina		1. Lining and protecting the lumen a. Providing elasticity and structural support 2. Regulating blood flow to arterioles and capillary beds 3. Support and protection	Distal branching arteries feeding into small regions of the body or organ
<i>Arterioles</i>			
1. Thin tunica intima 2. Tunica media with one to two layers of smooth muscles 3. Thin tunica adventitia * No internal and external elastic laminae		1. Lining and protecting the lumen 2. Regulating blood flow to capillary beds 3. Support, protection, and anchoring	Immediately before capillary beds

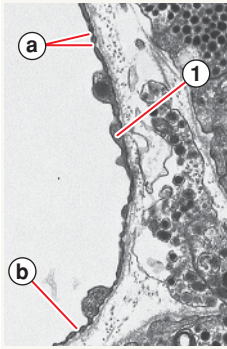
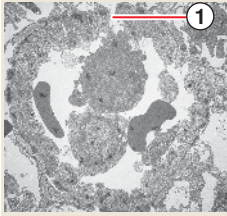
CAPILLARIES

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Continuous capillaries</i>			
Simple squamous epithelium lined with endothelial cells		Lining and protecting the lumen, tightly regulating transport of	Exocrine glands, muscle tissues, lungs, CNS, testes, thymic cortex


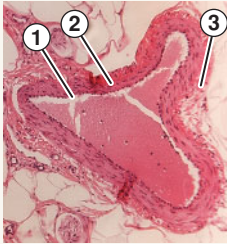
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Continuous capillaries</i>			
1. Thin cytoplasm a. Pinocytic vesicles 2. Flattened nuclei: Heterochromatic 3. Tight junctions between cells		molecules across the capillary wall 1. Ensuring fast exchange of gas and small, lipid-soluble molecules a. Allowing transport of large volume of materials 2. Maintenance of endothelial cell 3. Preventing paracellular exchange of materials	1. Innermost layer in contact with blood a. Within endothelial cell cytoplasm 2. In endothelial cell, protruding out into the luminal space 3. Between endothelial cells
<i>Fenestrated capillaries</i>			
Simple squamous epithelium lined with endothelial cells 1. Thin cytoplasm		Lining and protecting the lumen, transport of larger molecules across the capillary 1. Aiding fast exchange of gas and small, lipid-soluble molecules	Endocrine glands, intestinal tracts, kidneys

(continued)

CAPILLARIES (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Fenestrated capillaries</i>			
<p>a. Fenestrae: Small holes throughout cytoplasm</p> <p>b. Diaphragm: Thin, non-cellular membrane across the openings of fenestrae</p>		<p>a. Forming channels across the capillary wall, allowing bigger molecule transport</p> <p>b. Unknown function</p>	
<i>Sinusoids (discontinuous capillaries)</i>			
<p>Simple squamous epithelium lined with endothelial cells, large diameter</p> <p>1. Large openings between endothelial cells, partial to complete lack of basal lamina</p>		<p>Lining and protecting the lumen while allowing large molecules and cells to move between the lumen and interstitium</p> <p>1. Transport of large molecules and cells between lumen and interstitium</p>	<p>Liver, spleen, bone marrow</p>

VEINS

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Venules</i>			
<p>Three tunics are thin and indistinct with diameter between 0.1 mm and less than 1 mm</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Endothelium: Simple squamous epithelium 2. Thin tunica media: One to two layers of smooth muscles 		<p>Draining capillary beds, major response to vasoactive agents (histamine, serotonin)</p>	<p>Distal to capillary beds</p>
<i>Medium veins</i>			
<p>Diameter between 1 mm and 10 mm</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Tunica intima: Endothelium, indistinct internal elastic lamina 2. Tunica media: Much thinner than medium arteries 3. Tunica adventitia: Relatively thick, over two times the thickness of tunica media 4. Valves: Thin connective tissue flaps lined with endothelium 		<p>Draining venules, preventing back-flow of blood</p>	<p>Distal to venules</p>

(continued)

VEINS (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Large veins</i>			
<p>Diameter greater than 10 mm</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Tunica intima: Endothelium, small subendothelial tissue, indistinct internal elastic lamina 2. Tunica media: Relatively thin, several layers of smooth muscles 3. Tunica adventitia: Thickest of the three tunics 	<p>A histological micrograph of a large vein wall in cross-section. The wall is composed of three distinct layers. Layer 1 (Tunica intima) is the innermost layer, showing a thin endothelial lining. Layer 2 (Tunica media) is the middle layer, consisting of several layers of smooth muscle cells. Layer 3 (Tunica adventitia) is the outermost and thickest layer, composed of dense connective tissue. Dashed lines and numbers 1, 2, and 3 indicate these layers.</p>	<p>Draining medium venules and channeling blood toward the heart</p>	<p>Inferior vena cava, superior vena cava, hepatic portal vein, brachiocephalic veins</p>

Additional Concepts

- **Arteriovenous (AV) shunts:** Direct routes between arterioles and venules that bypass capillary beds. Found in the skin, erectile tissues, and areas of the gastrointestinal (GI) tract. When the AV shunts close, blood is forced to go through the capillaries before draining into the venules, thus slowing down the blood flow in a given area to promote exchange of molecules.
- **AV shunts in the skin:** Open in response to cold, allowing blood to run directly from arterioles to venules, bypassing the skin capillary beds in an effort to conserve heat. In response to heat, AV shunts close, forcing blood in the arterioles to flow through the capillary beds before draining into venules, thus allowing heat to be released from the surface of the body.
- **Pericytes:** Supportive cells that surround the outside of the capillaries, arterioles, and venules. In addition to helping endothelial cells to maintain their function and integrity, pericytes possess the ability to contract and regulate flow of blood through the capillaries or venules.

Clinical Significance

- **Ischemic cardiomyopathy:** Most commonly caused by atherosclerosis in which the coronary arteries become stenotic due to progressively thickening atheromatous plaques, resulting in an

insufficient oxygen delivery to a region of the heart supported by the vessel.

- **Myocardial infarction:** Cardiac muscle cell death resulting from the lack of blood supply to a region of the heart, commonly due to near 100% stenotic coronary artery.
- **Atherosclerosis:** Accumulation of lipid and thickening of the tunica intima that eventually leads to stenosis of the artery. Atherosclerotic tissue weakens the arterial wall and may cause damage to the endothelium, making it susceptible to formation of thrombosis.
- **Deep vein thrombosis (DVT):** Blood clot formation most often in the deep veins of lower limbs associated with prolonged immobility and subsequent pooling of the stagnant blood in a vein. Once dislodged, the clot becomes an embolus and can be life-threatening when it travels through the circulatory system and gets lodged in other sites, commonly the pulmonary arteries.

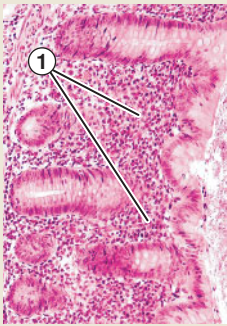
Lymphatic System

7

INTRODUCTION


The lymphatic system is composed of groups of cells, tissues, and organs that monitor the body for harmful substances and combat to eliminate them. Leukocytes, particularly lymphocytes, make up the parenchyma of the lymphoid system and are found in diffuse lymphoid tissues, lymphoid nodules, and lymphoid organs. Lymphoid organs are composed of lymphoid tissues surrounded by a connective tissue capsule. Lymphatic vessels allow communication among lymphatic structures and with the blood vascular system. Due to their important immunologic functions, structures of the lymphoid system are found throughout the body but are more prominent along the mucosa and at key points between the limbs and the trunk.

THE LYMPHATIC SYSTEM

LYMPHOID TISSUES		
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Diffuse lymphoid tissue</i>		
<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Relatively high concentration of leukocytes (primarily lymphocytes, plasma cells, eosinophils, and macrophages) evenly distributed in loose connective tissue matrix	 <p>A histological micrograph showing diffuse lymphoid tissue. The tissue is characterized by a high density of small, dark-staining nuclei (leukocytes) scattered throughout a loose connective tissue matrix. A circled number '1' is placed in the upper left quadrant, with two lines pointing to the dense population of cells.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Protection of the body from pathogens and initiation of immune response
		<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Lamina propria of the gastrointestinal (GI), respiratory, and urinary tract mucosa; dispersed throughout lymphoid organs

(continued)

LYMPHOID TISSUES (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Lymphoid nodules (follicles)</i>			
2. Dense aggregate of mostly B lymphocytes. When activated by antigens, lymphoid nodules produce antibodies		2. Protection of the body from pathogens and initiation of immune response	2. Lamina propria of the GI, respiratory, and urinary tract mucosa; dispersed throughout lymphoid organs; most prominent in tonsils, Peyer patches, and appendix
3. Germinal center: Lighter staining central area		3. Site of lymphocyte proliferation, plasma cell differentiation, and antibody production	3. In the center of activated lymphoid nodules
4. Mantle zone (corona): Ring of densely basophilic area		4. Composed of newly formed lymphocytes	4. Surround the germinal center

Additional Concepts

- **MALT (mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue):** Diffuses lymphoid tissues and lymphoid nodules that are closely associated with the mucosa.
- **GALT (gut-associated lymphoid tissue):** The MALT in the GI tract mucosa.
- **BALT (bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue):** The MALT in the respiratory tract mucosa.
- Tonsils are an example of GALT; however, because they exhibit a partial connective tissue capsule, tonsils are considered to be lymphoid organs.

TONSILS

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Palatine tonsils (tonsils)</i>			
<p>Paired, dense collections of lymphoid tissues that contain:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium 2. Crypts: Deep invaginations of lining epithelium with lymphocyte infiltrate 3. Incomplete connective tissue capsule 4. Diffuse lymphoid tissue 5. Numerous lymphoid nodules, many with prominent: 		<p>Immune function at the entrance of the oropharynx</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Form the protective mucosal lining 2. Increase surface area for contact between the oropharyngeal content and the immune cells 3. Separate tonsils from underlying connective tissue and wall them off in the event of infection 4-5. Immune function 	<p>Either side of the oropharynx between palatopharyngeal and palatoglossal arches</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Pharyngeal surface of the tonsil 2. Extend into tonsillar parenchyma 3. Between the tonsil and underlying connective tissue 4. Throughout tonsillar parenchyma 5. Throughout tonsillar parenchyma

(continued)

TONSILS (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Palatine tonsils (tonsils)</i>			
a. Germinal centers b. Mantle zones (corona)			a. In the center of activated lymphoid nodules b. Peripheral margins of germinal centers
<i>Pharyngeal tonsil (adenoid)</i>			
Unpaired collection of lymphoid tissue that contains: 1. Ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelial lining 2. Incomplete connective tissue capsule 3. Numerous lymphoid nodules 4. Diffuse lymphoid tissue		Immune function on the roof of the nasopharynx 1. Form the mucosal lining 2. Separate the tonsil from underlying connective tissue and wall it off in the event of infection 3-4. Immune function	Roof of the nasopharynx 1. Pharyngeal surface 2. Between the tonsil and underlying connective tissue 3-4. Throughout tonsillar parenchyma
<i>Lingual tonsil</i>			
Collection of lymphoid tissue: 1. Nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium		1. Form the mucosal lining	Surface of the posterior third of the tongue 1. Pharyngeal surface

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Lingual tonsil</i>			
2. Crypts: Wide invagination of lining epithelium		2. Increase surface area for contact between oropharyngeal content and immune cells	2. Extend into tonsillar parenchyma
3. Incomplete connective tissue capsule		3. Separate the tonsil from connective tissue	3. Between the tonsil and underlying connective tissue
4. Numerous lymphoid nodules and diffuse lymphoid tissue		4. Immune function	4. Throughout tonsillar parenchyma

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

Although all three tonsils exhibit similar parenchymal histology of diffuse lymphoid tissue and lymphoid nodules, other structural features help distinguish the three.

	Palatine Tonsils	Pharyngeal Tonsils	Lingual Tonsils
Mucosal epithelium	Nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium	Ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium	Nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium
Crypts	Deep, branched, and numerous	None	Wide, short, and not branched

Clinical Significance

- Tonsillitis:** Inflammation of the tonsils as the result of bacterial or viral infection. Red, swollen palatine tonsils with purulent exudates (pus) are easily observed when the patient opens the mouth and the tongue is depressed. Patients present with sore throat, pain, fever, and dysphagia. In severe cases, the infection may extend to involve the pharynx, larynx, and auditory tube.

LYMPH NODES

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
Numerous oval structures of varying size throughout the body		Filtration of lymph	Found throughout the body along the lymphatic vessels; more numerous in axilla, groin, neck, and mesenteries
1. Convex side		1. Afferent lymphatic vessels enter	1. Portion with convex contour
2. Hilum: Indented area		2. Efferent lymphatic exit and blood vessels and nerves exit and enter	2. Concave area
3. Capsule with trabeculae: Dense connective tissue	3. Structural support	3. Superficial-most protective structure and its extensions into the lymphatic tissue	
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
4. Outer (superficial/nodular) cortex: Lymphoid nodules composed of mostly B lymphocytes		4. Screen the lymph for antigens, differentiate into plasma cells, and produce antibodies upon contact with an antigen	4. Deep to capsule
5. Inner (deep/para-) cortex: Diffuse lymphoid tissue composed of mostly T lymphocytes		5. T cells interact with antigen-presenting cells	5. Between the outer cortex and the medulla

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
<p>6. Medulla composed of:</p> <p>a. Medullary cords: Denser collections of B cells, plasma cells, macrophages, and reticular cells</p> <p>b. Medullary sinuses: Lymphatic channels between the cords</p>		<p>6. Continued filtration and collection of lymph</p> <p>a. Phagocytosis, antibody production</p> <p>b. Lymph flow and collection</p>
		<p>6. Center of the lymph node</p> <p>a. Scattered throughout medulla</p> <p>b. In between medullary cords</p>

Additional Concepts

- **Lymph:** Excess interstitial fluid that is collected and transported to blood circulatory system. Along the way, lymph is filtered by several lymph nodes for antigens or other potentially harmful particles or cells.
- **Flow of lymph through a lymph node:** Afferent lymphatic vessel → subcapsular (cortical) sinus → peritrabecular (trabecular) sinus → medullary sinus → efferent lymphatic vessel (FIG. 7-1).

Clinical Significance

- **Lymphadenitis:** Reactive, inflammatory enlargement of lymph nodes when lymphocytes respond to antigens by proliferating, forming germinal centers and producing antibodies. Enlarged lymph nodes are commonly referred to as swollen glands and can be observed or palpated in the neck of a patient with oropharyngeal infection or in the axilla or groin of a patient with an infection in the extremity.
- **Sentinel node:** The first lymph node or a group of lymph nodes that the lymph from certain regions of the body passes through.
- **Sentinel node biopsy:** Procedure in which sentinel nodes are removed to determine the presence of metastatic tumor cells to

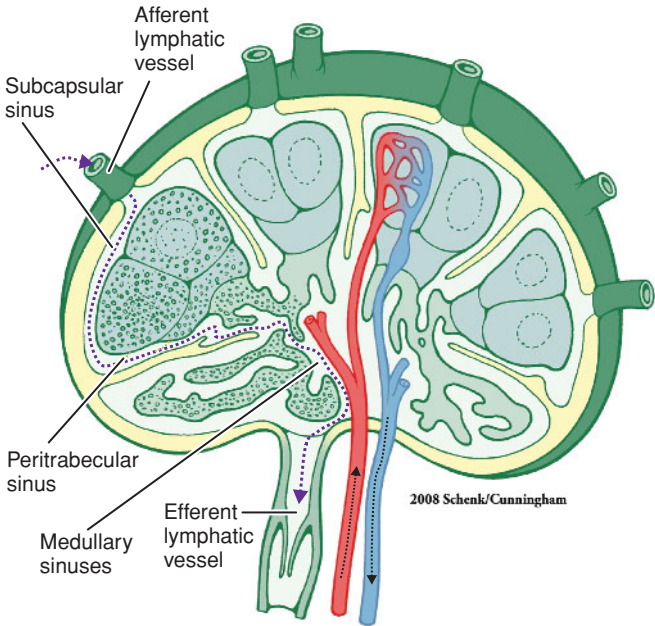
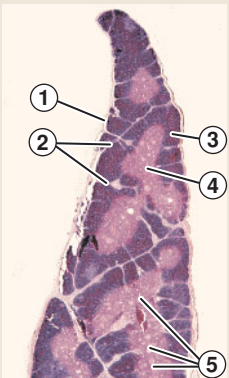
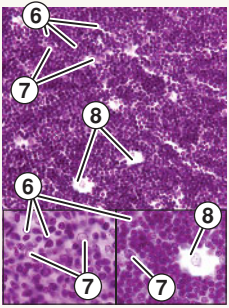


Figure 7-1. Flow of lymph through a lymph node. (From Cui D. *Atlas of Histology with Functional and Clinical Correlations*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2009:119.)

stage certain types of cancer. To identify sentinel nodes, surgeons inject dye or radioactive fluid into the tumor or its surrounding area then trace its path to find and biopsy the nodes.

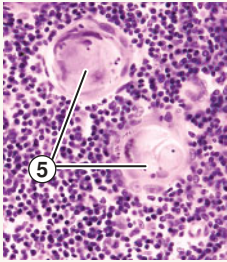
THYMUS

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
Bilobed lymphoid organ:	Differentiation and maturation of T lymphocytes	Superior anterior mediastinum
1. Dense connective tissue capsule	1. Protection, outer boundary of the organ	1. External-most surface of the organ

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
<p>2. Trabeculae: Dense connective tissue extensions from the capsule into the parenchyma</p> <p>3. Cortex: Cell-dense, basophilic staining region</p> <p>4. Medulla: Lighter-staining region</p> <p>5. Thymic (Hassall) corpuscles: Eosinophilic, spherical structures with concentric layers</p>	 <p>2. Form septa that separate thymic lobules, carry vessels and nerves</p> <p>3. T-cell selection and maturation</p> <p>4. T-cell selection, maturation, storage, and release into circulation</p> <p>5. Unclear</p>	<p>2. Extend into the parenchyma from the capsule</p> <p>3. Deep to the capsule</p> <p>4. Central region of the organ</p> <p>5. Scattered in the medulla</p>
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
<p>Cortex composed of:</p> <p>6. Thymocytes: Small, basophilic developing T cells</p> <p>7. Epithelioreticular cells (types I, II, III): Stellate cells with larger, lighter-staining nuclei</p> <p>8. Macrophages: Clear-staining cytoplasm</p>	 <p>6. Undergoing selection and maturation</p> <p>7. Form architectural framework, contribute to thymic-blood barrier, participate in T-cell selection</p> <p>8. Phagocytose unselected thymocytes</p>	<p>6–8. Throughout cortex and medulla</p>

(continued)

THYMUS (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
<p>Medulla composed of more epithelioreticular cells (types IV, V, VI) and loosely packed, mature T cells and:</p> <p>5. Thymic (Hassall) corpuscles: Concentric bundles of epithelioreticular cells</p>		
		

Additional Concepts

- **Blood-thymic barrier:** Composed of continuous capillaries and epithelioreticular cells that form a physical barrier between the thymocytes and blood to protect the developing thymocytes from antigen exposure, which can lead to compromised immune function.
- **Epithelioreticular cells versus reticular cells:** Two different groups of cells in terms of embryonic origin, morphology, and function. Due to both cells' involvement in the lymphoid system and possession of "reticular" in the name, students often confuse the two.
 - **Epithelioreticular cells:** Epithelioid in shape (broad, large cytoplasm), play a role in T-cell development, and only found in the thymus.
 - **Reticular cells:** Fibrocyte-like cells with thin, spindle-shaped morphology that produce reticular fibers in most lymphoid organs including the thymus.

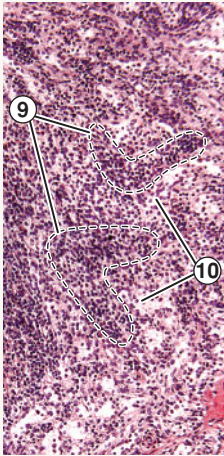
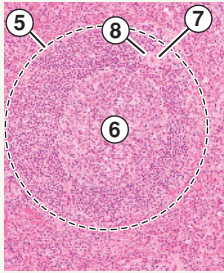
SPLEEN

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
Single, fist-sized lymphoid organ:		Filtration, clearance of microorganisms, antigens from blood. Production of antibodies, removal of abnormal erythrocytes, hemato-poiesis	Upper left quadrant in peritoneal cavity at 9–12 rib level
1. White pulps: Cell-dense, gray, nodular areas	<p>A histological micrograph of the spleen. The image shows a dense field of purple-stained cells. There are two distinct circular nodules outlined with dashed white lines, labeled '1'. These nodules are surrounded by a darker, more cellular area labeled '2'. A thick, blue-stained layer on the right side is labeled '3'. Several thin, blue-stained lines extending from the right side into the purple area are labeled '4'.</p>	1. Filter and monitor blood, produce antibodies when activated by an antigen	1–2. Throughout spleen
2. Red pulps: Softer, red, less cell-dense areas		2. Filter blood, destroy damaged or altered erythrocytes	
3. Capsule: Dense connective tissue		3. Protection and coverage	3. Surrounds the spleen
4. Trabeculae: Dense connective tissue		4. Structural support and delivery of vessels	4. Extensions of the capsular tissue into the parenchyma
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
White pulps:			
5. Lymphoid nodules; mostly B cells with or without germinal centers		5. Screen blood for antigens and produce plasma cells and antibodies	5. Throughout the organ

(continued)

SPLEEN (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
6. Germinal center: Lighter-staining area	6. B-cell proliferation, differentiation to plasma cells and antibody production	6. Center of lymphoid nodule
7. Central artery: Branch of splenic artery	7. Deliver blood to white and red pulps	7. Periphery of a white pulp lymphoid nodule
8. Periarterial lymphatic sheath (PALS): Aggregate of T cells	8. Immune function	8. Immediate vicinity of the central artery
Red pulps are composed of:		
9. Splenic cords (cords of Billroth): Network of reticular cells, lymphocytes, macrophages, and plasma cells in reticular connective tissue	9. Screen blood and destroy irregular erythrocytes	9. Throughout red pulp of the spleen, in between the sinusoids
10. Splenic sinuses: Sinusoids lined by long, parallel endothelial cells	10. Filtration of blood and destruction of irregular erythrocytes	10. Throughout red pulp of the spleen, in between splenic cords



Additional Concepts

- **Spleen:** A unique organ that serves both the lymphoid system (providing immunologic function) and the circulatory system (filtering blood, destroying erythrocytes, undergoing hematopoiesis when induced).

- **Open circulation:** Process through which the spleen releases blood from the central artery into the splenic cord, maximizing exposure of blood cells to macrophages. Healthy erythrocytes can easily pass through the sinusoidal endothelial cells to return to circulation, whereas irregular, older cells are trapped in the cords and soon engulfed by macrophages.
- **Closed circulation:** Process through which the spleen carries blood from the central artery into the splenic sinusoids; the blood is then directly returned to circulation.

Clinical Significance

- **Splenomegaly:** An enlargement of the spleen that may occur as the spleen performs its normal function or as a result of a variety of pathologic conditions such as sarcoidosis, leukemia, etc.
- **Autosplenectomy:** Splenic tissue loss as a result of multiple infarction of the spleen. Patients with sickle cell anemia often present with autosplenectomy as the result of repeated episodes of abnormal blood cells clogging small vessels and causing infarction of the tissue downstream. Patients are more susceptible to fulminant bacterial infections.

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	Lymph Node	Thymus	Spleen
Parenchymal organization	Cortex: Lymphoid nodules in outer cortex Medulla: Medullary cords and sinuses	Cortex: Densely cellular but no lymphoid nodules Medulla: Hassall corpuscles. No cords or sinuses	White pulps: Lymphoid follicles with central arteries Red pulps: Splenic cords and sinuses
Erythrocytes	Few	Few	Abundant
Unique features	Subdivision of cortex into outer and inner cortex	Hassall corpuscles in the medulla	No cortex or medulla Lymphoid follicles with peripheral central arteries

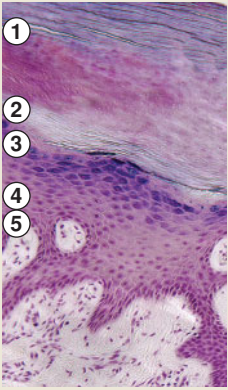

Integumentary System

8

INTRODUCTION

The integumentary system is composed of skin, which is comprised of the epidermis and dermis. Found within skin are numerous accessory structures such as glands, sensory structures, hair, and nails. The hypodermis lies deep to the dermis and is often composed of adipose connective tissue; though it is not a part of the skin, sensory and accessory structures of the skin may be found in this layer. Skin can be classified into thick and thin skin.

THE INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM

THICK SKIN			
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Epidermis</i>			
Keratinized stratified squamous epithelium composed mostly of keratinocytes that are organized into five layers, or strata: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Corneum: Keratinized, anucleate cells 2. Lucidum: Newly keratinized, anucleate cells 3. Granulosum: Flattening cells filled with keratohyaline granules 		Protection from friction and desiccation <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Protection and waterproofing 2. Protection and waterproofing 3. Keratin fiber organization, initiation of keratinization 	Palms and soles Superficial  Deep

(continued)

THICK SKIN (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Epidermis</i>			
4. Spinosum: Mature keratinocytes 5. Basale: Single layer of cuboidal stem cells and melanocytes		4. Keratinocyte maturation 5. Where skin stem cells and melanocytes reside	
<i>Dermis</i>			
Connective tissues organized into two layers: 1. Papillary dermis: Loose connective tissue 2. Reticular dermis: Dense, irregular connective tissue		Provide support to epidermis and connect it to hypodermis 1. Contain blood and nerve supplies to the epidermis; cushion; shock absorption 2. Structural support, strength and elasticity	Deep to epidermis 1. Superficial 20% of the dermis 2. Deep 80% of the dermis

Additional Concepts

- **Dermal papillae:** Finger-like papillary dermal tissue extensions increase surface area for epidermal and dermal contact. At sites that encounter high mechanical stress, dermal papillae are longer and closely packed.
- **Dermal ridges:** Longer than dermal papillae, these dermal extensions form a distinct pattern unique to each individual and are the histologic structures that cause fingerprints on the epidermal surface.

MNEMONIC***Come, Let's Get Sun-Burned!***

This phrase corresponds to the layers of thick skin epidermis from superficial to deep. The layers are:

- Stratum **C**orneum
- Stratum **L**ucidum
- Stratum **G**ranulosum
- Stratum **S**pinosum
- Stratum **B**asale

THIN SKIN			
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Epidermis</i>			
<p>Keratinized stratified squamous epithelium composed mostly of keratinocytes that are organized into four layers (no stratum lucidum).</p> <p>1. Corneum: Keratinized, anucleate cells</p> <p>2. Granulosum: Flattening cells filled with keratohyaline granules</p> <p>3. Spinosum: Mature keratinocytes</p> <p>4. Basale: Single layer of cuboidal stem cells and melanocytes</p>		<p>Protection from friction and desiccation</p> <p>1. Protection and waterproofing</p> <p>2. Keratin fiber organization, initiation of keratinization</p> <p>3. Keratinocyte maturation</p> <p>4. Where skin stem cells and melanocytes reside</p>	<p>All skin except for palms and soles</p> <p>Superficial</p> <p style="text-align: center;">↓</p> <p>Deep</p>

(continued)

THIN SKIN (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Dermis</i>			
Connective tissues organized into two layers:		Provide support to epidermis and connect it to hypodermis	Deep to epidermis
1. Papillary dermis: Loose connective tissue		1. Contain blood and nerve supplies to the epidermis; cushion; shock absorption	1. Superficial 20% of the dermis
2. Reticular dermis: Dense, irregular connective tissue		2. Structural support, strength and elasticity	2. Deep 80% of the dermis

Additional Concepts

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	Thick Skin	Thin Skin
Epidermis	Five layers	Four layers (no stratum lucidum)
Accessory structures	Eccrine sweat glands, no hair	Hair, skin-associated glands

EPIDERMAL–MELANIN UNIT

A group of keratinocytes that are supplied with melanosomes from a single melanocyte. The size of the unit varies in different parts of the body.

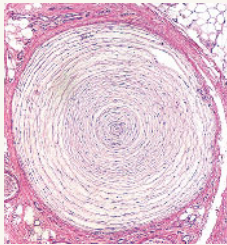
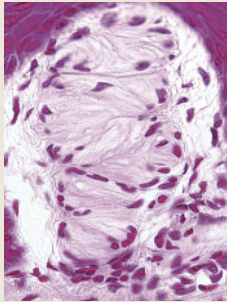
Clinical Significance

Three types of skin cancer can arise from the epidermis:

- **Basal cell carcinoma:** Most common, but most benign of the three; arises from stratum basale
- **Squamous cell carcinoma:** Second-most common and more aggressive than basal cell carcinoma

- **Melanoma:** Arises from melanocytes of stratum basale and is the most serious form

SENSORY AND ACCESSORY STRUCTURES OF THE SKIN

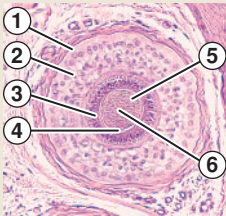
SENSORY STRUCTURES			
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Merkel cells</i>			
Dendritic epidermal cells in the stratum basale; associated with afferent nerve fibers		Sensitive mechanoreceptors for fine touch and vibration	Stratum basale Most abundant in skin area of acute sensory perception: Fingertips, lips, clitoris, glans penis
<i>Pacinian corpuscles</i>			
Large spherical structures: Unmyelinated nerve ending surrounded by thick Schwann cells and capsular concentric lamellae		Receptors for deep pressure and vibration	Reticular dermis and hypodermis throughout body
<i>Meissner corpuscles</i>			
Small ovoid structures: Unmyelinated nerve endings surrounded by Schwann cells in spiraling layers		Receptors for low-frequency stimuli	Papillary layer of hairless skin: Lips, palms, and soles

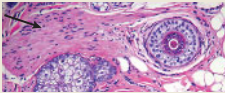

(continued)

SENSORY STRUCTURES (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Ruffini's corpuscles</i>		
Fusiform structures: Thin capsule surrounding unmyelinated nerve endings suspended in fluid	Receptors for stretch and torque	Reticular dermis throughout body

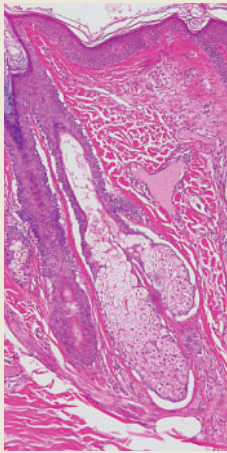
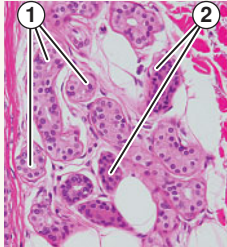
ACCESSORY STRUCTURES

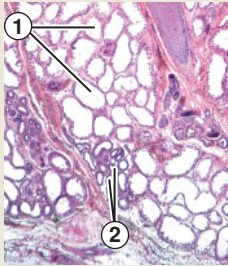
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Hair</i>		
<p>Hair shaft: Specialized keratinized cells forming 4, 5, 6 (cuticle, cortex, and medulla)</p> <p>Hair root: Portion of hair inside hair follicle</p>	Protection, sensory roles, temperature regulation	All over skin surface except palms, soles, lips, clitoris, and penis
<i>Hair follicle</i>		
<p>Hair follicle: Composed of specialized epithelium supplied by dermal papilla:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Glassy membrane 2. External root sheath 3. Internal root sheath 4. Cuticle 5. Cortex 6. Medulla 	 <p>Production and growth of hair</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Form follicle-dermis boundary 2. Continuous with epidermis 3. Keratin production 4. Outer layer of the hair shaft 5. Form bulk of the hair 6. Core of hair 	<p>Reticular dermis and/or hypodermis</p> <p>Medulla is only seen in thick hairs</p>

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Arrector pili muscle</i>			
Smooth muscle strips associated with hair follicles		Contract to raise hair in response to cold or sympathetic stimuli	Run between hair follicle and papillary dermis
<i>Nail</i>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Nail plate: Specialized stratum corneum 2. Nail root: Embedded part of nail plate 3. Nail matrix: Specialized stratum basale and spinosum-producing nail 4. Nail bed: Specialized stratum spinosum 5. Eponychium: Stratum corneum near nail root 6. Hyponychium: Stratum corneum under free-hanging nail 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Protection, support, traction 2. Newly forming nail substance is added here. 3. Produce the nail and nail bed 4. Support and protect overlying nail plate 5. Waterproof, fuse skin and nail plate 6. Waterproof barrier 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Tip of finger 2. Under the skin 3. Under the nail root 4. Under the nail plate 5. Between skin and beginning of the nail plate 6. Between free edge of the nail and the skin

(continued)

ACCESSORY STRUCTURES (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Sebaceous glands</i>		
<p>Branched acinar exocrine glands composed of polygonal, vesicular cells that undergo holocrine secretion</p> 	<p>Secrete oily and waxy secretion (sebum) with antibacterial and waterproof properties to coat the hair and skin surrounding it</p>	<p>Almost always associated with hair follicles Specialized sebaceous glands in eyelids: Meibomian glands</p>
<i>Eccrine sweat glands</i>		
<p>Simple coiled tubular and composed of distinct:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Secretory portion: Simple cuboidal epithelium with larger, pale-staining cells 2. Ductal portion: Stratified cuboidal epithelium with smaller, darker-staining cells 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Produce watery sweat with electrolytes. Cools body temperature at evaporation 2. Conduct sweat directly to the surface of the skin 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All over the skin in the dermis and hypodermis except for the lips, glans penis, prepuce, clitoris, and labia minora 2. Concentrated in palms and soles

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Apocrine sweat glands</i>			
<p>Simple coiled tubular and composed of:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Secretory portion: Simple cuboidal epithelium with eosinophilic cells lining large lumen 2. Ductal portion: Stratified cuboidal epithelium and drain into hair follicle 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Produce viscous secretion with organic compounds 2. Conduct secretions and drain into hair follicle 	<p>Dermis and hypodermis of the skin of axilla, genitalia, anus, and nipples</p>

Additional Concepts

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	Eccrine Sweat Gland	Apocrine Sweat Gland
Morphology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small lumen • Pale-staining secretory cells • Numerous coiled ducts intermixed with secretory units • Ducts open directly into skin surface 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large lumen often with secretory products • Eosinophilic secretory cells • Ducts are not commonly intermixed with secretory units • Ducts often drain into hair follicle canal
Location	All skin except for lips and portions of genitalia	Only in the skin of axilla, genitalia, anus, and around nipples

INNERVATION OF SWEAT GLANDS

Both are innervated by the autonomic nervous system:

- **Eccrine glands** are innervated by cholinergic neurons and respond to heat and stress.
- **Apocrine glands** are innervated by adrenergic neurons and respond to emotional and sensory stimuli.

Clinical Significance

- **Acne:** With increasing sebum production at puberty, sebaceous gland ducts in hair follicles may be clogged, irritated, or colonized by bacteria, causing acne lesions.
- **Body odor:** Although apocrine secretions are odorless, when bacteria on the skin surface metabolize organic contents of the secretion, odor is generated.
- **Sweat** produced by eccrine sweat glands may indicate a sign of disease.
 - **Cystic fibrosis:** Sweat is often hypertonic due to high sodium and chloride content.
 - **Uremia:** In advanced kidney failure, excess urea is released in sweat.

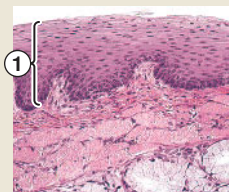
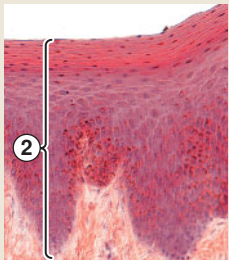
Digestive System

9

INTRODUCTION

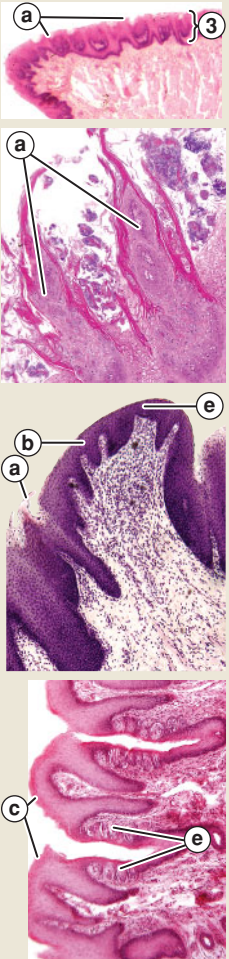
The digestive system is composed of the alimentary (gastrointestinal) canal, a long and convoluted tube that transports the ingested content from the oral cavity to the anal orifice, and a set of accessory glands that secrete lubricants, digestive enzymes, and other products to aid in the process of digestion. The alimentary canal is compartmentalized and specialized to ensure proper storage, pathogen control, and maximum absorption of nutrients.

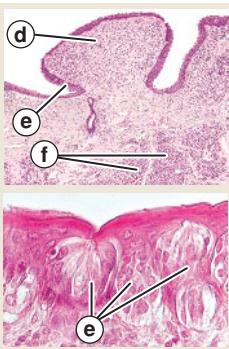
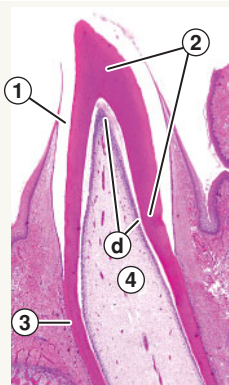
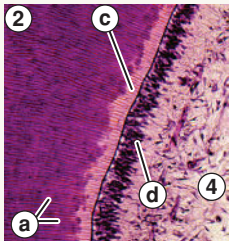
THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

ORAL CAVITY		
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Lining</i>		
1. Lining mucosa: Nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium		1. Protecting the oral mucosa in areas not heavily affected by abrasion
2. Masticatory mucosa: Slightly keratinized stratified squamous epithelium		2. Protecting the oral mucosa in areas that encounter frequent friction, force, and abrasion
		1. Buccal membrane, soft palate, uvula, underside of the tongue, inner lips 2. Hard palate, gingiva

(continued)

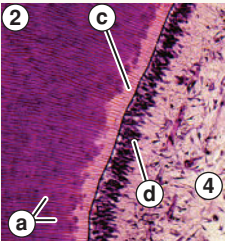
ORAL CAVITY (continued)

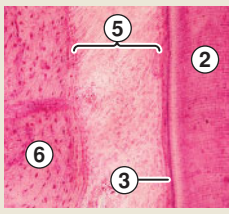
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Lining</i>		
<p>3. Specialized mucosa: Keratinized and nonkeratinized projections</p> <p>a. Filiform papillae: Small, numerous, keratinized projections</p> <p>b. Fungiform papillae: Mushroom-like nonkeratinized projections</p> <p>c. Foliate papillae: Ridge-like projections</p> <p>d. Circumvallate papillae: Large, round projections surrounded by circumferential grooves</p> <p>e. Taste buds: Pale-staining oval special sensory receptor</p>		<p>3. Providing friction to manipulate and taste food</p> <p>a. Providing friction, protecting from abrasion</p> <p>b. Housing taste buds on the superior surface</p> <p>c. Housing taste buds on the lateral walls</p> <p>d. Housing taste buds on the lateral walls</p> <p>e. Relaying special sensory information to the central nervous system (CNS)</p>
		<p>3. Dorsum of the tongue</p> <p>a. Throughout dorsal surface of the tongue</p> <p>b. Throughout dorsal surface of the tongue, more numerous toward the tip of the tongue</p> <p>c. On posterolateral surfaces of the tongue</p> <p>d. In one row, anterior to sulcus terminalis of the tongue</p> <p>e. In fungiform, foliate, and circumvallate papillae</p>

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Lining</i>		
<p>f. Serous (Von Ebner) glands: Largely acinar exocrine glands</p> 	<p>f. Producing watery secretion to dissolve tastants and to remove them from the folds and grooves of the tongue</p>	<p>f. In connective tissue underlying foliate and circumvallate papillae</p>
<i>Tooth</i>		
<p>1. Enamel: Acellular, highly mineralized, hardest substance in the body</p> <p>2. Dentin: Mineralized, eosinophilic layer</p> 	<p>1. Withstanding force and repeated friction to shear and tear food during mastication</p> <p>2. Forming the bulk and shape of the tooth, withstanding force during mastication</p>	<p>1. Outermost layer of the crown</p> <p>2. Middle layer of the tooth, both in the crown and the root</p>
<p>a. Dentinal tubules: Narrow channels running thickness of dentin</p> 	<p>a. Housing odontoblast processes</p>	<p>a. Throughout dentin</p>

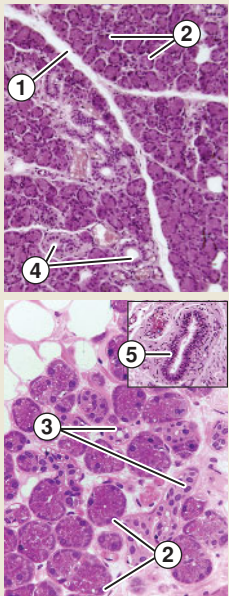
(continued)

ORAL CAVITY (continued)

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Tooth</i>			
<p>b. Odontocyte processes: Projections of odontoblasts</p> <p>c. Predentin: Much less mineralized, lighter-staining area</p> <p>3. Cementum: Mineralized, eosinophilic, thin, bone-like tissue layer</p> <p>4. Pulp cavity: Loose connective tissue with abundant neurovasculature</p> <p>d. Odontoblasts: Basophilic columnar cells</p>		<p>b. Maintaining dentin, participating in force transfer and sensory role</p> <p>c. Newly secreted dentin material</p> <p>3. Covering the outside of the root, anchoring the tooth in the socket (alveolus) via interaction with periodontal ligament</p> <p>4. Delivering neurovascular supply to the tooth</p> <p>d. Maintaining dentin, sending out odontoblast processes</p>	<p>b. Within dentinal tubules</p> <p>c. In contact with odontoblast layer of the pulp cavity</p> <p>3. Outermost surface of the root</p> <p>4. Core of the tooth, both in the crown and in the root</p> <p>d. Immediately under dentin</p>

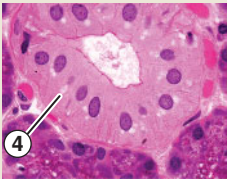
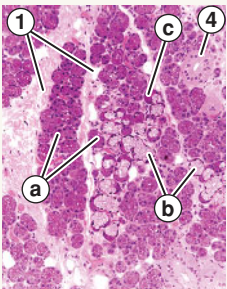
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Supporting tissues of the tooth</i>		
5. Periodontal ligament: Dense connective tissue with abundant collagen type I fibers		5. Anchoring tooth in its socket, transferring force from tooth to the bone
6. Alveolar processes: Bone tissues that project from mandible and maxilla		6. Forming tooth sockets and securing tooth

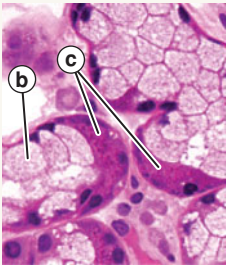
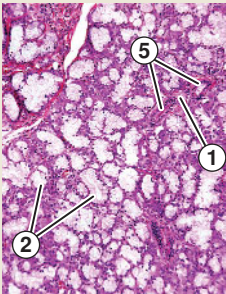
SALIVARY GLANDS

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Parotid salivary glands</i>			
Compound branched acinar exocrine glands		Production and secretion of watery saliva	Between ramus of the mandible and styloid process of the temporal bone
1. Capsule and connective tissue septa: Dense irregular connective tissue		1. Surrounding and protecting salivary gland and dividing it into lobes and lobules	1. Outer covering and internal extensions
2. Secretory acini: Spherical secretory units, serous-secreting pyramidal to cuboidal cells		2. Producing and secreting watery fluid containing amylase	2. Throughout the gland
3. Intercalated ducts: Simple cuboidal epithelium	3. Draining each secretory acinus	3. Within the lobules of the gland	

(continued)

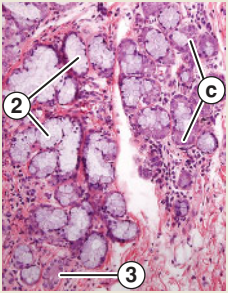
SALIVARY GLANDS (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Parotid salivary glands</i>			
4. Striated ducts: Simple columnar epithelium, subnuclear striations		4. Draining intercalated ducts	4. Within the lobules of the gland
5. Interlobular ducts: Simple to stratified columnar epithelium		5. Draining each lobe and transferring saliva to the oral cavity	5. Within interlobular and interlobar septa
<i>Submandibular salivary gland</i>			
Compound tubuloacinar exocrine glands with more serous- than mucous-secreting units		Production and secretion of seromucous saliva	Submandibular triangle of the neck
1. Capsules and septa: Dense irregular connective tissue		1. Surrounding and protecting salivary gland and dividing it into lobes and lobules	1. Outer covering and internal extensions
2. Secretory units a. Serous acini: Dark-staining cuboidal to pyramidal cells b. Mucous tubules: Clear-staining columnar cells		2. Production of saliva a. Secretion of watery fluid containing amylase b. Mucous secretion	2. Throughout the gland


Structure		Function	Location
<i>Submandibular salivary gland</i>			
<p>c. Serous demilunes: Mucous tubules capped by serous-secreting acinar-forming hemispheres</p> <p>3. Intercalated ducts: Simple cuboidal epithelium</p> <p>4. Striated ducts: Simple columnar epithelium, subnuclear striations</p> <p>5. Interlobular ducts: Simple to stratified columnar epithelium</p>		<p>c. Serous and mucous secretion</p> <p>3. Draining each secretory acinus</p> <p>4. Draining intercalated ducts</p> <p>5. Draining each lobe</p>	<p>3. Within the lobules of the gland</p> <p>4. Within the lobules of the gland</p> <p>5. Within interlobular and interlobar septa</p>
<i>Sublingual salivary glands</i>			
<p>Compound tubuloacinar exocrine glands with more mucous- than serous-secreting units</p> <p>1. Capsules and septa: Dense irregular connective tissue</p>		<p>Production and secretion of mostly mucinous saliva</p> <p>1. Surrounding and protecting salivary gland and dividing it into lobes and lobules</p>	<p>Within floor of the oral cavity</p> <p>1. Outer covering and internal extensions</p>

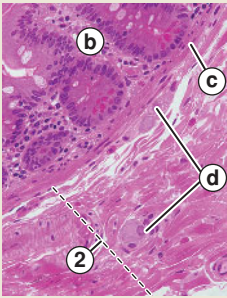
(continued)

SALIVARY GLANDS (continued)

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Sublingual salivary glands</i>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Mostly mucous tubules with some serous demilunes Intercalated ducts: Simple cuboidal epithelium Striated ducts: Simple cuboidal to columnar epithelium, subnuclear striations Interlobular ducts: Simple to stratified columnar epithelium 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Production of saliva, mostly mucus with a little serous content Draining each secretory acinus Draining intercalated ducts Draining each lobe 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Throughout the gland Within the lobules of the gland Within the lobules of the gland Within interlobular and interlobar septa



GENERAL HISTOLOGY OF THE GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT*

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Layers</i>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Mucosa: Composed of three layers 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Lining and protecting the lumen, absorption and secretion 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Innermost layer

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Layers</i>		
<p>a. Epithelium: Varies depending on location between nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium to simple columnar epithelium</p> <p>b. Lamina propria: Loose connective tissue to diffuse lymphoid tissue</p> <p>c. Muscularis mucosa: Thin strip of smooth muscle tissue</p>		<p>a. In contact with lumen</p>
<p>2. Submucosa: Mostly dense irregular connective tissue</p> <p>d. Submucosal (Meissner) plexus: Pale-staining, oval parasympathetic ganglia</p>		<p>b. Supporting the epithelium, providing immune function</p> <p>c. Providing movements of the mucosa independent of outer layers, aiding in gland secretion</p>
	<p>2. Providing structural support</p> <p>d. Delivery of parasympathetic innervations</p>	<p>2. Between mucosa and muscularis propria</p> <p>d. Scattered throughout submucosa</p>

(continued)

GENERAL HISTOLOGY OF THE GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT* (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Layers</i>			
<p>3. Muscularis propria (externa): Thicker smooth muscle layers</p> <p>e. Circular layer: Circumferential orientation</p> <p>f. Myenteric (Auerbach) plexus: Pale-staining, oval parasympathetic ganglia</p> <p>g. Longitudinal layer: Runs parallel to long axis of the digestive tract</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Oblique layer in the stomach, runs obliquely <p>4. Serosa: Connective tissue</p>		<p>3. Producing peristaltic movements to conduct chyme through the digestive tract</p> <p>e. Sequential constriction of gastrointestinal (GI) tract</p> <p>f. Delivery of parasympathetic innervations</p> <p>g. Wave-like contraction through the length of GI tract</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Churning of the food <p>4. Covering, delivering neurovascular support to the outside of the GI tract</p>	<p>3. Between submucosa and serosa</p> <p>e. Inner layer of muscularis propria</p> <p>f. Between circular and longitudinal layers of muscularis propria</p> <p>g. Outer layer of muscularis propria</p> <p>4. Outer layer to muscularis propria in most intraperitoneal portions of GI tract</p>
			

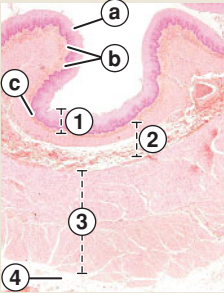
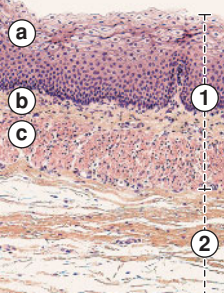
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Layers</i>		
h. Mesothelium: Simple squamous epithelium, visceral layer of peritoneum i. Subserosa: Loose to adipose connective tissue • Adventitia: Connective tissue without mesothelium	h. Producing serous fluid i. Supporting, insulating GI tract	h. Outermost layer of the GI tract i. Between mesothelium and muscularis propria • Outermost layer of mediastinal esophagus, portions of duodenum and ascending and descending colons and rectum

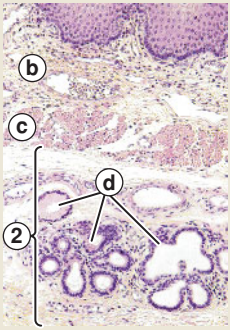
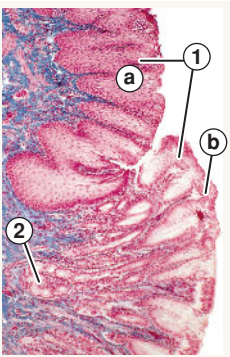
*Also known as the alimentary canal, GI or digestive tract.

Additional Concepts

- Mucosa:** May be considered as a skin equivalent inside the body. It covers all areas within the body that come in contact with the outside environment and foreign molecules. Much like the skin, which has an epithelium (epidermis), a connective tissue layer (dermis), and accessory glands and structures (sweat glands, hair), mucosa too has sublayers (epithelium, lamina propria, muscularis mucosa) and associated glands. Similar to skin, mucosa plays a critical role in host defense by physically preventing pathogens from entering the body and immunologically responding to antigens. The epithelium of the GI tract is protective, nonkeratinized stratified squamous at the ends and absorptive and secretory simple columnar epithelium in between.

ESOPHAGUS

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Layers</i>		
<p>Long, muscular, flexible tube with collapsed lumen when not in use</p>		<p>Conducting ingested bolus from oral cavity to stomach, preventing reflux when not in use</p>
<p>1. Mucosa: Thrown into longitudinal folds with collapsed lumen</p> <p>a. Epithelium: Nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium</p> <p>b. Lamina propria: Loose connective tissue</p> <p>c. Muscularis mucosa: Smooth muscle tissue</p>		<p>1. Protecting, distending and collapsing the lumen as bolus passes</p> <p>a. Protecting, withstanding friction during swallowing</p> <p>b. Nutritional, immunologic support for epithelium</p> <p>c. Contributing to mucosal folding</p>
<p>2. Submucosa: Dense irregular connective tissue</p> <p>d. Esophageal glands: Compound tubuloacinar exocrine glands</p>		<p>2. Structural support, delivery of neurovasculature to the esophageal wall</p> <p>d. Secreting mucus, lubricating the lumen</p>
		<p>Extending from pharynx to stomach, behind trachea, most of the segment in mediastinum, short terminal segment in peritoneum</p> <p>1. Luminal layer</p> <p>a. In contact with lumen</p> <p>b. Deep to epithelium</p> <p>c. Outermost mucosal layer</p> <p>2. Between muscularis mucosa and propria</p> <p>d. Scattered throughout submucosa, increase in number closer to stomach</p>

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Layers</i>			
3. Muscularis propria e. Skeletal muscles f. Skeletal and smooth muscles g. Smooth muscles		3. Between submucosa and adventitia e. Upper one-third of esophagus f. Middle one-third of esophagus g. Lower one-third of esophagus	
4. Adventitia or serosa: Connective tissue		4. Anchoring, stabilizing, supporting esophagus	4. Outermost layer
<i>Gastroesophageal junction</i>			
1. Epithelium: Abrupt transition a. Nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium b. Simple columnar epithelium 2. Lamina propria: Abundant mucous glands in the stomach			1. Lining and protecting mucosa a. Reduction of friction b. Protection from acid
	2. Coating the epithelium with mucus to provide protection from acid		2. Lamina propria of stomach

(continued)

ESOPHAGUS (continued)

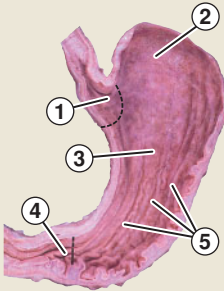
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Gastroesophageal junction</i>		
3. Muscularis mucosa is thickened.	3. Providing limited sphincter-like function, limiting reflux of gastric content	3. At the junction of esophagus and stomach

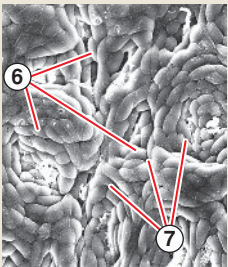
Clinical Significance

- **Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD):** Inflammation of esophageal mucosa as the result of prolonged, repeated exposure of esophageal mucosa to the gastric acid causing symptoms such as heartburn, regurgitation, and dysphagia. A subset of GERD patients may progress and develop Barrett esophagus, characterized by the erosion of esophageal mucosa and metaplastic simple columnar epithelium formation in the lower esophagus.

STOMACH

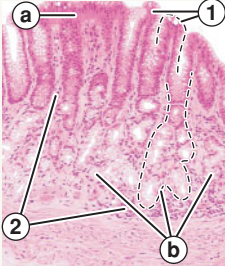
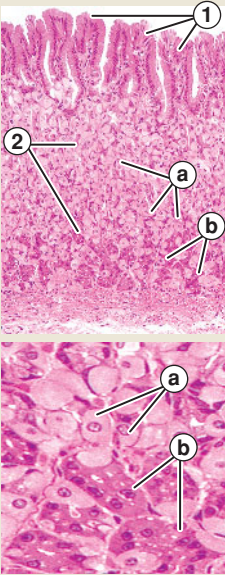
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
Dilated portion of the GI tract	Temporary storage of ingested food, mixing it with stomach juice; disinfecting; initiating digestion	Left quadrant of the abdomen
1. Cardia: Ring-like region surrounding gastrointestinal junction	1. Receiving bolus from esophagus, limited prevention of reflux	1. Area surrounding the esophageal orifice
2. Fundus: Dome-shaped superior out-pocketing	2. Accommodating large volume of food and drinks	2. Left superior portion of the stomach, abutting diaphragm



Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
3. Body: Majority of the stomach	3. Temporary storage, churning, mixing of food with stomach secretions	3. Majority of the midportion of the stomach
4. Pylorus: Funnel-like distal end of the stomach	4. Controlled release of chyme into duodenum, preventing reflux	4. Distal, inferior-most portion of the stomach
5. Rugae: Longitudinal mucosal folds	5. Allowing stomach to expand	5. Mostly in the body
6. Villi: Numerous mucosal projections into the lumen that give the mucosa a velvety appearance	6. Increasing surface area	6. Throughout stomach mucosa
7. Gastric pits: Hole-like depressions in between villi that are ductal openings of stomach glands	7. Releasing stomach gland secretions into the lumen	7. Throughout stomach mucosa
		
<i>Cardia and pyloric histology</i>		
1. Villi: Short mucosal projections	1. Increasing surface area	1. Throughout stomach mucosa
a. Epithelium: Simple columnar, mostly goblet cells	a. Forming a protective lining	a. Innermost layer

(continued)

STOMACH (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Cardia and pyloric histology</i>			
<p>2. Lamina propria: Diffuse lymphoid tissue with occasional lymphoid follicles</p> <p>b. Glands: Branched tubular mucous-secreting exocrine glands</p>		<p>2. Providing immune response to pathogens</p> <p>b. Secreting mucus to coat and protect the epithelium and contribute to gastric juice</p>	<p>2. Deep to epithelium</p> <p>b. Within lamina propria</p>
<i>Fundus and body histology</i>			
<p>1. Villi: Slightly longer, finger-like projections lined with simple columnar goblet cells</p> <p>2. Glands: Branched tubular exocrine glands</p> <p>a. Parietal cells: Eosinophilic, polygonal cells with central spherical nuclei</p> <p>b. Chief cells: Smaller basophilic cells with heterochromatic small nuclei</p>		<p>1. Increasing surface area</p> <p>2. Producing majority of the stomach juice</p> <p>a. Hydrochloric acid (HCl) production, intrinsic factor secretion</p> <p>b. Pepsinogen production</p>	<p>1. Throughout mucosa</p> <p>2. Lamina propria</p> <p>a. Mid- to luminal regions of the glands</p> <p>b. Deeper, basal regions of the glands</p>

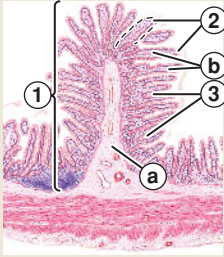
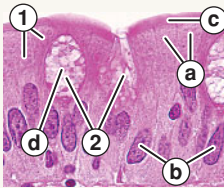
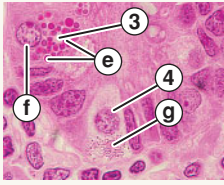
Clinical Significance

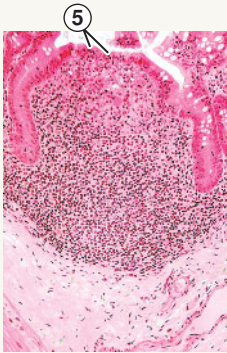
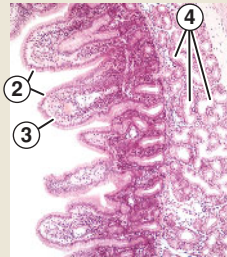
- **Gastric ulcer:** A gastric mucosal defect that extends through the muscularis mucosa when the protective mechanisms of the mucosa are altered by *Helicobacter pylori* infection or prolonged and repeated exposure to alcohol, bile salts, and acid.
- **Intrinsic factor:** Critical for absorption of vitamin B₁₂ in the small intestine. A decrease in intrinsic factor and insufficient vitamin B₁₂, which plays an important role in erythropoiesis, may result in development of pernicious anemia.

SMALL INTESTINE

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
<p>Long, convoluted tube of uniform diameter divided into three segments with nondistinct border but distinct histologic difference: Duodenum, jejunum, and ileum</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Plicae circulares: Large, horizontal projections <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Submucosal core 2. Villi: Numerous long, finger-like mucosal projections into the lumen that give the mucosa a velvety appearance <ol style="list-style-type: none"> b. Lamina propria core 	<p>Main site of digestion, absorption, and secretion</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Loosely compartmentalizing small intestine, increasing surface area 2. Increasing surface area for absorption and secretion 	<p>Largely in the middle of the abdominal cavity</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Throughout small intestine, most prominent and numerous in jejunum 2. Throughout small intestinal mucosa


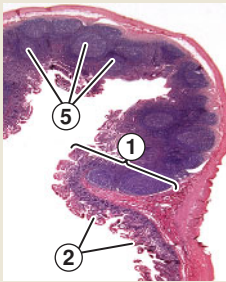
SMALL INTESTINE (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
<p>3. Crypts of Lieberkühn: Deep depressions in between villi that are ductal openings of intestinal glands</p>	 <p>3. Releasing intestinal gland secretions into the lumen</p>	<p>3. Throughout small intestinal mucosa</p>
<i>Cells of the small intestine</i>		
<p>1. Enterocytes: Columnar cells</p> <p>a. Eosinophilic cytoplasm</p> <p>b. Basal nuclei</p> <p>c. Microvilli</p>	 <p>1. Absorption</p>	<p>1. Throughout small intestine, most abundant in jejunum</p>
<p>2. Goblet cells: Pale-staining columnar cells</p> <p>d. Apical mucous-filled vesicles</p>	<p>2. Mucous secretion</p>	<p>2. Increase in number toward distal intestine</p>
<p>3. Paneth cells: Columnar cells</p> <p>e. Abundant supra-nuclear eosinophilic granules in cytoplasm</p> <p>f. Basal nuclei</p>	 <p>3. Antibacterial function, phagocytosis of bacteria, regulating normal flora</p>	<p>3. Base of the intestinal glands</p>
<p>4. Enteroendocrine cells: Columnar cells</p> <p>g. Infranuclear eosinophilic granules</p>	<p>4. Releasing hormones to regulate digestion</p>	<p>4. Base of the intestinal glands</p>

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Cells of the small intestine</i>			
5. M cells: Columnar cells, no microvilli		5. Antigen transport, engulfing microorganisms, immune function	5. In lining epithelium overlying Peyer patches
<i>Duodenum</i>			
First, short segment of small intestine		Neutralizing acidic chyme, mixing it with pancreatic secretions	Retroperitoneal position behind the liver and loops of distal small intestine
1. Plicae circulares: Moderate amount		1. Limited compartmentalization of duodenum	1. Throughout duodenum
2. Villi: Leaf-like, midlength mucosal projections		2. Increasing surface area	2. Throughout duodenal mucosa
3. Epithelium: Simple columnar epithelium		3. Protection, limited amount of absorption	3. Innermost mucosal layer in contact with duodenal content
4. Brunner glands: Branched tubuloacinar glands		4. Secretion of alkaline glycoproteins, bicarbonate ions, mucus, and zymogens	4. Duodenal submucosa

(continued)

SMALL INTESTINE (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Jejunum</i>			
<p>Middle, longest portion of the small intestine</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Plicae circulares: Prominent and numerous 2. Villi: Long, finger-like mucosal projections 3. Epithelium: Simple columnar with mostly enterocytes 4. Intestinal glands: Simple to branched tubular, relatively uniform in size and shape 		<p>Majority of absorption</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Limited compartmentalization of jejunum 2. Increasing surface area 3. Absorption of nutrients 4. Production of seromucous secretions 	<p>Within the peritoneum</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Throughout jejunum 2. Throughout jejunal mucosa 3. Innermost mucosal layer in contact with jejunal content 4. Lamina propria
<i>Ileum</i>			
<p>Last segment of small intestine</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Plicae circulares: Decrease in number and height toward distal portion 2. Villi: Long, finger-like mucosal projections 		<p>Absorbing vitamin B₁₂, bile salts, other nutrients remaining in chyme</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Limited compartmentalization of ileum 2. Increasing surface area 	<p>Lower portion of the peritoneum</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Throughout ileum 2. Throughout ileal mucosa

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Ileum</i>			
3. Epithelium: Simple columnar with increasing goblet cells		3. Absorption of nutrients, mucous secretion	3. Innermost mucosal layer in contact with ileal content
4. Intestinal glands: Simple to branched tubular, relatively uniform size and shape		4. Seromucous secretion	4. Lamina propria, may extend into submucosa
5. Peyer patches: Large lymphoid follicles with or without germinal centers a. M cells on the overlying epithelium		5. Immune surveillance and response to encountered antigens a. Antigen transport, engulfing microorganisms, immune function	5. In lining epithelium over Peyer patches

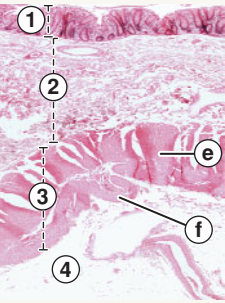
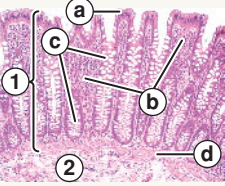
Additional Concepts

Structures that increase the surface area in small intestine:

- **Plicae circulares:** Macroscopic, submucosal projections into the lumen. The submucosal tissue forms the core of the plicae and is covered by the mucosa, containing villi.
- **Villi:** Microscopic mucosal projections into the lumen. Lamina propria forms the core of the villous projections.
- **Microvilli:** Microscopic, apical cellular projections into the lumen, forming the brush border and responsible for increasing the surface area of the small intestine the most.



LARGE INTESTINE (COLON)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
<p>Larger tube of varying diameters, six segments (cecum; ascending, transverse, descending, sigmoid colons; rectum), and an appendix. The histology of the six segments are almost identical.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Teniae coli: Three longitudinal strips of smooth muscles 2. Haustra: Small sacculculs of large intestine 3. Epiploic appendages: Saccules of fat tissue attached to outer surface 4. No plicae circulares 5. Little to no villi 		<p>Water and vitamin absorption, compaction and storage of fecal matter</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Aiding in peristalsis, forming haustra 2. Limited compartmentalization of the colon, moving fecal matter in a segmental fashion 3. No obvious function 4. Haustra rather than plicae circulares segment the colon 5. Reduction in surface area in contact with fecal matter 	<p>Both peritoneal (cecum, appendix, transverse colon, and sigmoid colon) and retroperitoneal (ascending and descending colons and rectum)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Throughout the length of large intestine except for appendix and rectum 2. Throughout the length of large intestine except for appendix and rectum 3. Outside of colon

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
<p>1. Mucosa: Relatively thin</p> <p>a. Epithelium: Simple columnar</p> <p>b. Lamina propria: Diffuse lymphoid tissue and lymphoid follicles</p> <p>c. Glands: Simple tubular glands</p> <p>d. Muscularis mucosa: Thin strip of smooth muscle layer</p>		<p>1. Absorption, protection, lubrication</p> <p>a. Lining the lumen, absorption of mostly water</p> <p>b. Immunologic surveillance, response to antigens</p>
<p>2. Submucosa: Dense irregular connective tissue</p> <p>3. Muscularis propria</p> <p>e. Circular layer: Smooth muscle tissue</p> <p>f. Longitudinal layer: Smooth muscle tissue, thickened bands (teniae coli)</p>		<p>c. Production of mucus</p> <p>d. Isolated movements of mucosa</p>
	<p>2. Structural support, delivery of neurovasculature</p> <p>3. Peristaltic movements</p> <p>e. Constriction of compartments</p> <p>f. Longitudinal contraction, maintaining haustra</p>	<p>1. Inner layer of colonic wall</p> <p>a. Innermost mucosal layer, in contact with lumen</p> <p>b. Deep to epithelium</p> <p>c. Within lamina propria</p> <p>d. Outermost mucosal layer</p> <p>2. Between muscularis mucosa and propria</p> <p>3. Between submucosa and serosa</p>

(continued)

LARGE INTESTINE (COLON) (continued)

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
4. Serosa or adventitia: Connective tissue with or without mesothelium	4. Protection, insulation, delivery of neurovasculature	4. Outermost layer	
<i>Appendix</i>			
<p>Similar histology as the rest of the large intestine except for:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Uniform, longitudinal layer instead of teniae coli 2. Large number of lymphoid nodules with or without germinal center 		<p>Largely immunologic surveillance and immune response</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Unclear 2. Phagocytosis, antibody production, lymphocyte proliferation and differentiation 	<p>Extending out from inferior portion of cecum, position with the peritoneum varies</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Outer layer of muscularis propria 2. Lamina propria and submucosa
<i>Anorectal junction</i>			
<p>Site of mucosal transition</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Simple columnar, colonic epithelium 		<p>Lining and protecting the mucosa at the site of transition</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Lining, lubricating lumen 	<p>Junction between terminal segment of rectum and anal column</p>

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Anorectal junction</i>		
2. Nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium, eventually transitioning to keratinized stratified squamous of the perianal skin	2. Protecting from abrasion and friction	

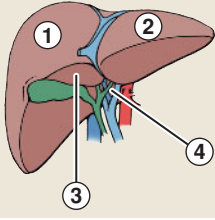
Clinical Significance

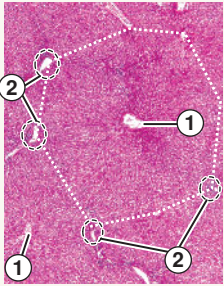
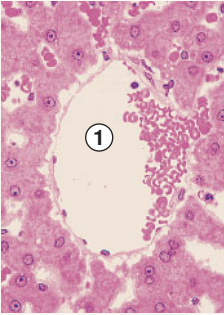
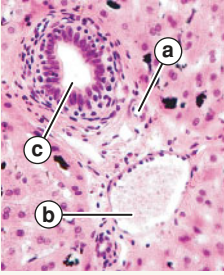
- **Appendicitis:** Inflammation of the appendix often as the result of luminal obstruction from fecaliths, lymphoid hyperplasia, or infection. Common symptoms of an acute event include anorexia, pain in the right upper quadrant, nausea, and vomiting. Appendectomy is the only curative treatment.
- **Diverticulitis:** Inflammation of diverticula and small herniations of the intestinal wall. Diverticula commonly occur in the large intestine in areas of wall weakness, such as entry/exit points for neurovasculature through the wall and areas in between teniae coli. In the event of obstruction of the diverticular lumen, acute inflammation, necrosis, and even perforation of intestinal wall may result.
- **Colonic polyps:** Slow-growing benign tumors of the colonic mucosa that may become malignant with increasing size, number, and occurrence. Certain histologic features of the polyps such as villous and secretory morphology are associated with high morbidity and mortality; hence, regular screening of the colon for the presence of polyps is an important preventative medical practice in the Western world.

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

Duodenum	Jejunum	Ileum	Colon
<i>Mucosa</i>			
Leaf-like villi	Prominent, numerous, and high plicae circulares; long and finger-like villi	Shorter, finger-like villi; abundant goblet cells in lining and glandular epithelia; Peyer patches present	Little to no villi, abundant goblet cells in lining and glandular epithelia, simple tubular glands, no Paneth cells
<i>Submucosa</i>			
Brunner glands are present	No glands	Peyer patches may extend into submucosa, no glands	No glands
<i>Muscularis propria</i>			
Two uniform layers	Two uniform layers	Two uniform layers	Outer longitudinal layer forms three bands (teniae coli) rather than a uniform layer

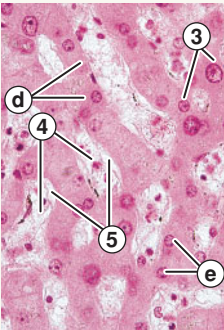
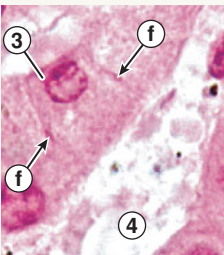
LIVER

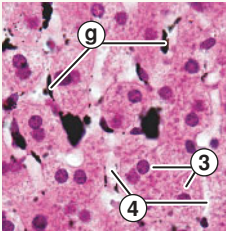
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
<p>Large, brown, red organ. Four lobes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Right lobe 2. Left lobe 3. Quadrate lobe 4. Caudate lobe 		<p>Over 200 functions. Functions related to digestive system include filtration of blood, detoxification, gluconeogenesis, and bile production.</p>	<p>Right upper quadrant of peritoneum, superior margin in contact with diaphragm</p>
<i>Hepatic lobule</i>			
<p>Hexagonal structural unit of the liver</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Central vein: Endothelium 		<p>Structural division of the liver</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Draining blood from sinusoids 	<p>Throughout liver</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Center of each lobule

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Hepatic lobule</i>		
<p>2. Hepatic portal triad: Three channels embedded in connective tissue</p> <p>a. Hepatic arteriole: Small lumen, one to two smooth muscles</p> <p>b. Hepatic venule: Largest of the three channels, one to two smooth muscles</p> <p>c. Bile duct: Simple cuboidal epithelium</p>	<p>2. Delivering blood to and draining bile from the lobule</p> <p>a. Delivering oxygenated blood</p> <p>b. Delivering oxygen-poor blood from hepatic portal system</p> <p>c. Draining bile from canaliculi</p>	<p>2. Each corner of the hexagonal lobule</p>
		
		
		

(continued)

LIVER (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
<p>3. Hepatocytes: Large, polygonal cells that form a cord or plate of hepatic lobule</p> <p>d. Cytoplasm: Large, eosinophilic cytoplasm with lipid or glycogen granules</p> <p>e. Nuclei: Large, euchromatic, spherical, distinct nucleoli</p> <p>f. Canaliculi: Small, narrow channels between neighboring hepatocytes, formed by tight junctions</p>		<p>3. Modification, storage of nutrients, detoxification of blood, gluconeogenesis, production and secretion of bile</p> <p>d. Metabolism</p> <p>e. Maintenance of cellular structure and function</p>
<p>4. Sinusoids: Endothelium with large gaps between cells and incomplete basement membrane</p>		<p>f. Draining bile and conducting it to bile ducts</p> <p>4. Channeling blood from hepatic portal vein and hepatic artery toward central vein; filtering, detoxifying, and regulating the amount of nutrient</p>
		<p>3. Throughout liver in cords or plates between sinusoids</p> <p>d. Major component of hepatocytes</p> <p>e. Central to slightly eccentric area of the cell</p> <p>f. In between hepatocytes</p> <p>4. In between the plates or cords of hepatocytes</p>

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
g. Kupffer cells: Resident macrophages of the liver, stellate to ovoid		g. Phagocytosis of pathogens, debris, damaged erythrocytes	g. Within the sinusoidal space
5. Perisinusoidal space: Narrow space between sinusoidal endothelial cell and hepatocytes		5. Retention of blood and other molecules for processing	5. Between hepatocytes and endothelium of sinusoids

Additional Concepts

Three ways to divide the liver (FIG. 9-1):

- **Hepatic lobules:** Hexagonal, morphologic division with the central vein in the center and approximately six hepatic portal triads in each corner of the hexagon. Easily recognizable, structural division in which blood travels from each corner of the hexagon and drains into the central vein and bile travels from the vicinity of the central vein toward bile ducts in the periphery.
- **Portal lobule:** Triangular division with a single hepatic portal triad in the center and three central veins in each corner. Bile pathway–centered view in which bile from the central vein in the center of the portal lobule is drained toward each side of the abutting hepatic portal triad.
- **Hepatic acinus:** Two adjacent triangular wedges of two hepatic lobules with the linear hepatic portal triad track in the middle and two central veins at each apex of each triangle. Blood pathway–centered view in which oxygenated and nutrient-rich blood from the hepatic portal tract drains toward the opposite poles, further dividing the hepatic tissue into three pairs of zones.

Clinical Significance

- **Liver cirrhosis:** Diffuse fibrosis (scarring) of the liver resulting from diverse causes such as hepatitis C infection and repeated and

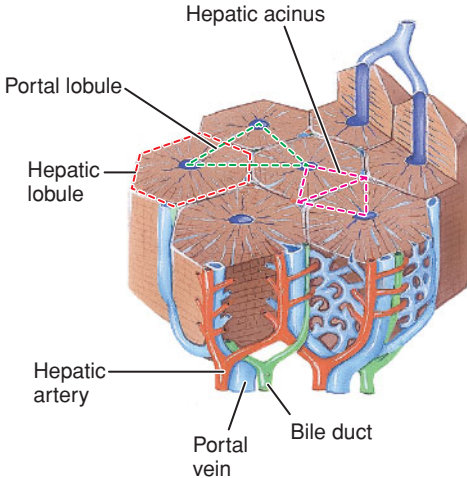
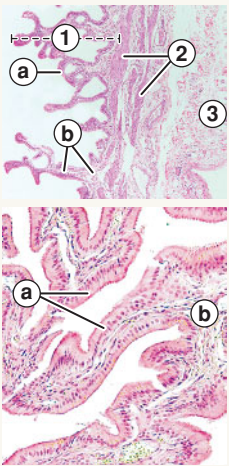


Figure 9-1. Hepatic divisions. (From Gartner LP, Hiatt JL. *Color Atlas of Histology*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2009:326.)

prolonged exposure to noxious and carcinogenic chemicals. Due to the liver's diverse and many critical roles in the body, severe cases of liver cirrhosis are associated with high morbidity and mortality. Complications of liver cirrhosis include portal hypertension, ascites, hepatorenal syndrome, and hepatic encephalopathy.

- **Complications of hepatic portal hypertension:** Increased hepatic portal pressure causes venous blood returning from the GI tract to take an alternate route back to the systemic circulation. Three major anastomotic sites between the portal and systemic vasculature are hence affected, resulting in:
 - **Esophageal varices:** Varicose vein of the esophagus. Due to nonkeratinized lining and frequent abrasion by the passing bolus, esophageal varices may tear easily and cause massive upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage.
 - **Caput medusae:** Varicose paraumbilical veins form a radiating pattern from the umbilicus.
 - **Rectal hemorrhoids:** Varicose veins in rectal mucosa near the anorectal junction.

GALL BLADDER

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Layers</i>		
<p>Bile-stained (green), oval, blind pouch</p> <p>1. Mucosa: Multiple folds project into the lumen.</p> <p>a. Epithelium: Simple columnar epithelium</p> <p>b. Lamina propria: Loose connective tissue, little to no glands</p> <p>2. Muscularis externa: Smooth muscles</p> <p>3. Serosa and adventitia: Connective tissue with or without mesothelium</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No muscularis mucosa or submucosa 	 <p>Storage, concentration, regulation of bile</p> <p>1. Lining and protecting mucosa</p> <p>a. Lining mucosa, limited amount of absorption</p> <p>b. Supporting epithelium, delivery of neurovasculature</p> <p>2. Contraction and injection of bile into duodenum</p> <p>3. Covering, insulating, protecting gall bladder</p>	<p>Inferior surface of the liver</p> <p>1. Inner layer of gall bladder</p> <p>a. Innermost layer in contact with bile in lumen</p> <p>b. Deep to epithelium</p> <p>2. Deep to lamina propria</p> <p>3. Outermost layer of gall bladder</p>

PANCREAS

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
Elongated fleshy organ		Production and secretion of digestive enzymes into duodenum, secretion of digestive hormones into bloodstream	Retroperitoneal position medial to the lesser curvature of duodenum
1. Head: Dilated right end of pancreas		1-3. Secretion of digestive enzymes and hormones	1. In contact with and medial to the duodenal curvature
a. Uncinate process: Bulbous inferior portion of the head			a. Inferior-posterior extension of the head
2. Body: Long midportion of the gland			2. Extend from the head toward the spleen
3. Tail: Tapered end of pancreas			3. Left, distal end close to spleen
4. Pancreatic duct: Runs the length of the gland and drains into the lumen of the duodenum		4. Draining exocrine glands of pancreas and delivering secretions to duodenum	4. Runs in the center throughout length of the pancreas, makes a sharp downward angle near the head

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
5. Accessory pancreatic duct: Short and straight continuation of the main pancreatic duct that opens proximal to the main pancreatic duct	5. Present in some portion of population, draining portions of exocrine pancreas	5. Straight continuation of the main pancreatic duct in the head
6. Hepatopancreatic sphincter (of Oddi)	6. Regulating flow of bile and pancreatic secretions into the duodenum, preventing reflux	6. Within duodenal wall
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
1. Exocrine glandular unit a. Secretory acini: Cuboidal to pyramidal cells with granular cytoplasm and spherical nuclei, arranged in spherical units b. Intercalated duct: Pale-staining simple cuboidal epithelium	<p>The image shows a histological section of the pancreas. Label 'a' points to a cluster of secretory acini cells with granular cytoplasm and spherical nuclei. Label 'b' points to a pale-staining intercalated duct lined with simple cuboidal epithelium. Label 'c' points to another acinus. A circled '2' indicates an islet of Langerhans, an endocrine cluster.</p>	1. Throughout pancreas a. Throughout pancreas at distal ends of intercalated ducts b. Immediately in contact with secretory acini
	1. Secreting digestive proenzymes a. Secreting peptidases, amylases, lipases, and nucleolytic enzymes b. Draining exocrine acini	

(continued)

PANCREAS (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
c. Centroacinar cells: Intercalated duct cells within acini • No striated ducts		c. Protruding into and draining acini	c. Within entryway into secretory acini
2. Pancreatic islets (of Langerhans): Pale-staining endocrine units		2. Producing and releasing hormones into blood vessels	2. Throughout pancreas
d. Alpha cells: Pale staining		d. Secreting glucagon	d. Peripheral portion of the islet
e. Beta cells: More eosinophilic staining		e. Secreting insulin	e. Central portion of the islet
f. Delta cells are indistinct.		f. Secreting somatostatin	f. Peripheral regions

Clinical Significance

- **Diabetes mellitus:** A disease of glucose metabolism resulting in a variety of complications
 - **Type I:** Results from the lack of insulin production by the pancreatic islets due to autoimmune destruction of the beta cells. Though type I diabetes mellitus can occur at any age, it is most commonly diagnosed in juveniles. Type I diabetes mellitus is not associated with obesity; patients are exogenous insulin dependent, and without insulin treatment, diabetic ketoacidosis ensues, which may progress to coma and death.
 - **Type II:** Results from insufficient insulin secretion by the beta cells in pancreatic islets or cellular resistance to insulin that causes hyperglycemia. Type II diabetes mellitus is commonly

associated with obesity and complications include diabetic retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy.

MNEMONIC

The relationship between pancreatic islet cells and their secretions can be remembered based on alphabetical order. A comes before B, and G comes before I. Therefore,

Alpha cells secrete **G**lucagon

Beta cells secrete **I**nsulin

Respiratory System

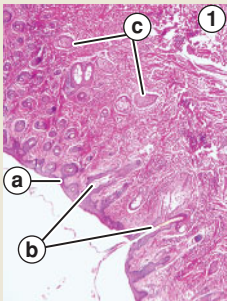
10

INTRODUCTION

The respiratory system is composed of the conducting portion, a series of passageways that filter, condition, and deliver the air to the gas exchange surface, and the respiratory portion, the lung tissues in which actual gas exchange takes place. Lungs are highly vascular with abundant continuous capillaries in close contact with alveolar epithelium. This allows rapid exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide between air in the alveolar space and blood in the capillary. The respiratory system also plays a role in olfaction, speech, minor hormone production, and immune response to antigens present in the inhaled air. Most of the conducting portion is lined by ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium, also known as the respiratory epithelium.

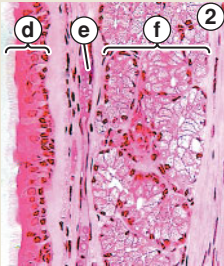
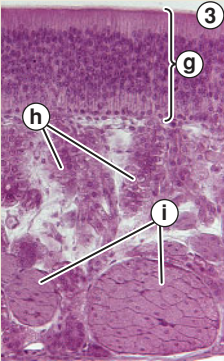
CONDUCTING PORTION

UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Nasal cavity</i>		
1. Nasal vestibule a. Stratified squamous epithelium b. Vibrissae	 1. Conduit between the nasal cavity and the external environment a. Protection b. Trap dust and particulate matter from inhaled air	1. Just inside nostrils a. Mucosal lining b. Throughout mucosa

(continued)

UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Nasal cavity</i>			
<p>c. Sebaceous glands</p> <p>2. Respiratory region (nasal mucosa)</p> <p>d. Ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium</p> <p>e. Rich vascular network</p> <p>f. Seromucous glands</p>		<p>c. Aid in trapping particulate matter</p> <p>2. Condition inhaled air</p> <p>d. Trap particulate matter and propel it toward nasopharynx</p> <p>e. Warm the air</p> <p>f. Secretion aids in filtering and moistening the air.</p>	<p>c. Through-out mucosa</p> <p>2. Inferior two-thirds of the nasal cavities</p> <p>d. Mucosal lining</p> <p>e. Lamina propria</p> <p>f. Lamina propria</p>
<p>3. Olfactory region (olfactory mucosa)</p> <p>g. Olfactory epithelium (specialized ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium with bipolar receptor neurons)</p> <p>h. Olfactory glands (Bowman glands)</p> <p>i. Axon bundles</p>		<p>3. Olfaction</p> <p>g. Receive and relay olfactory signals</p> <p>h. Secretions trap and dissolve odoriferous particles.</p> <p>i. Pass through cribriform plate of the ethmoid to form olfactory nerve</p>	<p>3. Superior portion of the nasal cavity</p> <p>g. Mucosal lining</p> <p>h. Lamina propria</p> <p>i. Lamina propria</p>

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Larynx</i>			
Tubular structure		Conduct air between oropharynx and trachea	Anterior neck, inferior to oropharynx, superior to trachea
1. Irregular hyaline cartilage plates		1. Laryngeal wall	
2. Epiglottis: Elastic cartilage		2. Strong yet flexible support, prevent food particles from entering the trachea	2. Entrance of the laryngeal inlet
3. Mucosal lining		3. Line the lumen	3. Lumen of the larynx
a. Respiratory epithelium		a. Trap particulate matter, propel mucus toward oropharynx	a. Most of the luminal surface
b. Nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium	b. Protection from friction and force	b. Mucosal linings of the true vocal cords, lingual surface and tip of epiglottis	
c. Lamina propria	c. Support epithelia	c. Deep to covering epithelium	
d. Glands	d. Produce seromucous secretion	d. Within lamina propria	
4. False vocal cords (ventricular folds)	4. Resonance production	4. Superior to true vocal cords	

(continued)

UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT (continued)

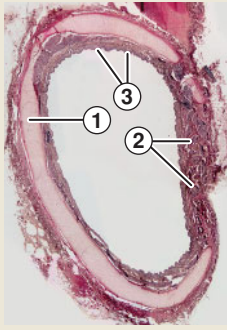
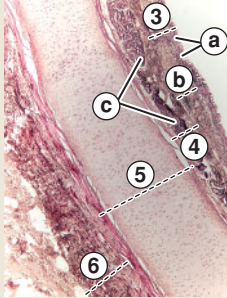
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Larynx</i>		
5. True vocal cords	5. Sound production	5. Inferior to false vocal cords
e. Vocalis muscles: Skeletal muscle tissue	e. Contract to produce various pitches	e. Core of the cord

Clinical Significance

- **Anosmia:** Loss of sense of smell that may occur when olfactory axon bundles are severed permanently. Because the axon bundles passing through cribriform plates are fragile, anosmia is not uncommon in patients with traumatic head injury.
- **Nose bleed:** Highly vascular nasal mucosa is lined by delicate respiratory epithelium rather than more protective stratified squamous epithelium; hence, bleeding from this region occurs relatively easily with dryness or varying degrees of trauma.
- **Nasal congestion:** Inflammation of the nasal mucosa as the result of allergic reaction or viral infection can restrict air conduction and cause difficulty breathing.
- **Laryngitis:** Inflammation of the laryngeal mucosa as the result of infection causes difficulty breathing and swallowing, hoarseness, and even loss of voice.
- **Age-related changes in epiglottis:** With advancing age, elastic cartilage is reduced or replaced by adipose tissue. Decreased elasticity and resulting stiffness of the epiglottis increase risk of food or liquid aspiration.

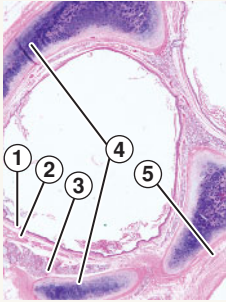
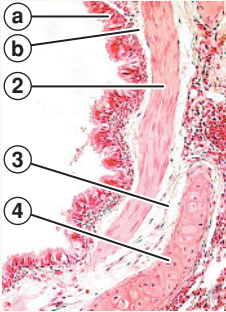
LOWER RESPIRATORY TRACT




Structure	Function	Location
<i>Trachea</i>		
Long, flexible, tubular airway:	Conduct air from larynx to primary bronchi	Inferior to larynx, anterior to esophagus
1. C-shaped cartilage rings	1. Keep the lumen open	1. Throughout the length of trachea at regular intervals

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Trachea</i>			
2. Trachealis: Longitudinal smooth muscles		2. Narrow the lumen	2. Between the posterior opening of the C-shaped cartilage
Four layers of the wall			
3. Mucosa		3. Line the tracheal lumen	3. Luminal surface
a. Respiratory epithelium		a. Condition inhaled air, capture particles and propel them toward oropharynx	a. Mucosal surface
b. Lamina propria: Connective tissue		b. Support respiratory epithelium	b. Deep to epithelium
4. Submucosa: Loose to dense connective tissue		4. Carry bigger vessels, house bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue (BALT)	4. Deep to mucosa
c. Seromucous glands		c. Produce seromucous secretion	c. Throughout submucosa
5. Cartilage layer: Hyaline cartilage		5. Structural framework, keep the lumen open	5. Core of the tracheal wall
6. Adventitia: Connective tissue	6. Secure trachea to surrounding structures, carry bigger vessels and nerves	6. Outermost layer of the tracheal wall	

(continued)


LOWER RESPIRATORY TRACT (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Bronchi</i>			
Series of airway branches of progressively decreasing size		Conduct air	Conducting airway branches distal to trachea
1. Mucosa		1. Line the lumen	1. Luminal surface
a. Respiratory epithelium		a. Condition inhaled air, capture particles and propel them upward	a. Mucosal surface
b. Lamina propria		b. Support respiratory epithelium	b. Deep to epithelium
2. Smooth muscle layer		2. Regulate diameter of the airway	2. Deep to mucosa
3. Submucosa: Loose connective tissue		3. Support and delivery of vessels	3. Deep to smooth muscle layer
4. Cartilage layer: Hyaline cartilage ranging from complete rings in primary bronchi to small plates or bars in terminal bronchi		4. Structural framework and support	4. Between smooth muscle layer and adventitia
5. Adventitia: Loose to dense connective tissue		5. Blend with adjacent structures	5. Outermost layer

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Bronchioles</i>			
Series of smaller branches from bronchi		Conduct air	Conducting branches distal to bronchi
1. Luminal epithelium		1. Line the lumen	1. Luminal surface
a. Respiratory epithelium		a. Condition inhaled air, capture particles and propel them upward	a. Larger bronchioles
b. Ciliated simple columnar epithelium		b. Support respiratory epithelium	b. Smaller bronchioles
c. Clara cells: Nonciliated cuboidal cells with dome-like apical projections		c. Secrete surface-active agents and antimicrobial products	c. Throughout bronchiolar epithelium, increase in number in distal bronchioles
2. Smooth muscle layer		2. Regulate diameter of the airway	2. Middle layer
3. Adventitia		3. Blend with adjacent structures	3. Outermost layer
<i>Terminal bronchioles</i>			
Distal-most and smallest bronchioles		Conduct air	Distal-most segment of the conduction portions
1. Simple cuboidal epithelium		1. Condition inhaled air, capture particles and propel them upward	1. Luminal surface

(continued)

LOWER RESPIRATORY TRACT (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Terminal bronchioles</i>			
a. Clara cells: Nonciliated cuboidal cells with dome-like apical projections 2. Smooth muscle layer 3. Adventitia		a. Secrete surface-active agents and anti-microbial products 2. Regulate diameter of the airway 3. Blend with adjacent structures	a. Epithelium 2. Middle layer 3. Outermost layer

Clinical Significance

- **Asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)** are associated with spasms of bronchial smooth muscles. Inhalant bronchodilator medications are designed to relax smooth muscles.

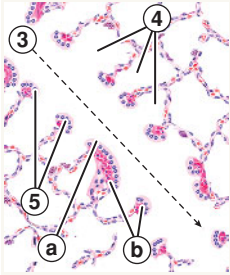
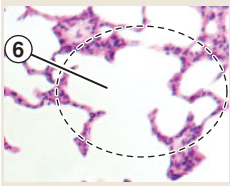
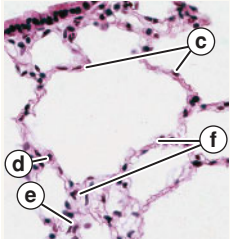
HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	Trachea	Bronchi	Bronchioles
Epithelium	Ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium	Ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium	Varies; ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium, ciliated simple columnar, and ciliated simple cuboidal epithelium depending on the size of the branch
Cartilage	C-shaped rings with trachealis muscles closing the opening of the C	Complete rings in primary bronchi; plates, bars, and islands of cartilage with decreasing size	None
Clara cells	None	None	Increase in number with decreasing size of the branch

RESPIRATORY PORTION			
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Respiratory bronchiole</i>			
<p>Narrow, smallest of bronchioles, beginning of the respiratory portion</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Ciliated simple cuboidal epithelium containing Clara cells: Cuboidal cells with apical dome-like projections Several alveoli: Directly arise from the bronchiole 		<p>Air conduction, gas exchange</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Condition inhaled air, capture particles and propel them upward, secrete surface-active agents and antimicrobial products Gas exchange 	<p>Distal-most branches of bronchioles</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Luminal lining Scattered throughout the length of the bronchiole, increase in number distally
<i>Alveolar ducts</i>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Extended air passageway from respiratory bronchiole Series of alveoli open to a common channel 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Conduct air from respiratory bronchiole to alveolar sacs Gas exchange 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Distal to respiratory bronchioles Line the air channel

(continued)

RESPIRATORY PORTION (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Alveolar ducts</i>		
<p>5. Knob-like structures cap the alveolar edge</p> <p>a. Cuboidal epithelium</p> <p>b. Smooth muscle cells</p>		<p>5. Provide limited structural support, protection and contraction of alveolar ducts</p>
		<p>5. Alveolar edges facing the duct</p> <p>a. In contact with air</p> <p>b. Deep to epithelium</p>
<i>Alveolar sac</i>		
<p>6. Common space into which a cluster of alveoli open</p>		<p>6. Terminal air conduit to the terminal clusters of alveoli</p>
		<p>6. Distal to alveolar ducts</p>
<i>Alveolus</i>		
<p>Spherical terminal air space composed of:</p> <p>7. Simple squamous epithelium</p> <p>c. Type I alveolar cells (pneumocytes): Squamous cells</p> <p>d. Type II alveolar cells (pneumocytes): Cuboidal cells</p>		<p>7. Gas exchange, lubrication of alveolar lining</p> <p>c. Gas exchange across the cell</p> <p>d. Surfactant production</p>
		<p>7. Luminal lining</p> <p>c. 95% of the alveolar luminal lining</p> <p>d. Scattered throughout alveolar wall, often at septal junctions</p>

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Alveolus</i>		
e. Macrophages: Irregular-shaped cells, often with carbon particles	e. Phagocytosis of dust, cell debris, pathogens	e. Scattered in alveolar septa, occasionally in alveolar space
8. Thin connective tissue layer carrying:	8. Structural and functional support	8. Under the epithelium
f. Continuous capillaries	f. Gas exchange across the cell	f. Share basement membrane with type I alveolar cells

Additional Concepts

- **Surfactant:** Reduces the surface tension in alveoli and prevents them from collapsing and closing the air space. Premature infants with insufficient surfactant production are at increased risk of respiratory distress syndrome due to the inability to expand the collapsed alveoli.
- **Alveolar septum (septal wall):** A wall formed by two or more alveoli abutting each other, sharing a common connective tissue and capillaries in the middle. Hence, the alveolar septum is composed of two alveolar epithelial linings and connective tissue in the middle (FIG. 10-1).
- **Alveolar pores:** The openings in alveolar septa through which air can pass between alveolar spaces, allowing aeration of alveoli distal to obstruction.
- **Blood-air barrier:** A set of structures the gas crosses between the air space and blood during the gas exchange process. The barrier is composed of the cytoplasm of the type I alveolar cell, the cytoplasm of the capillary endothelial cell, and the basement membrane shared between the two cells (FIG. 10-2).
- **Segmental branching of the bronchi:** Allows pathologic portions of the lungs to be removed without affecting other segments of the bronchial tree.

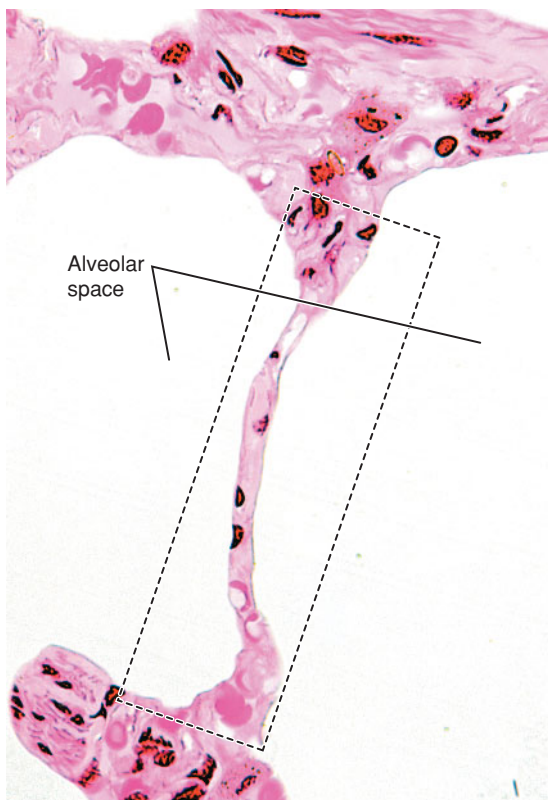


Figure 10-1. Interalveolar septum.

Clinical Significance

- **Anthracosis:** Accumulation of carbon dusts or particles in the lung tissues leading to varying degrees of blackened appearance of the lungs. Inhaled carbon dust particles (black) are engulfed by macrophages in the lungs. Some of these macrophages are removed, but some remain in the stroma of the lungs. Most urban dwellers exhibit some amount of anthracosis. Heavy smokers and coal miners exhibit more extensive anthracosis, and in severe

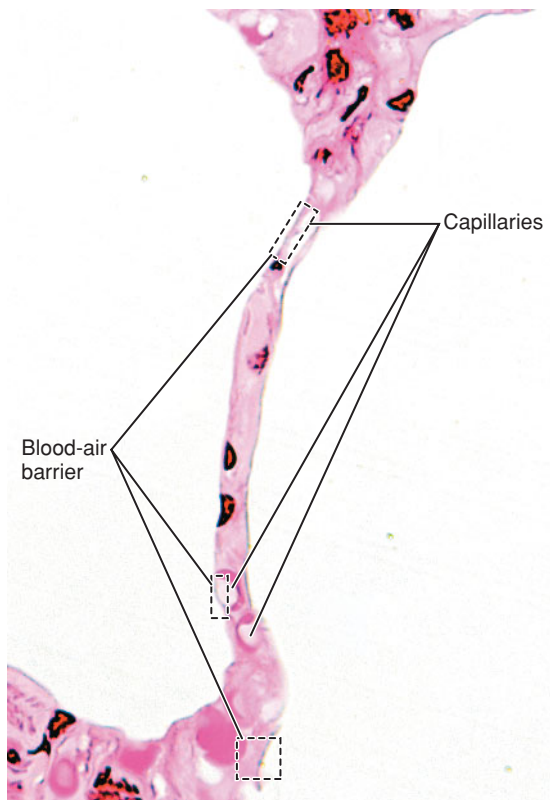


Figure 10-2. Blood-air barrier.

cases, it may progress to pneumoconiosis as the result of inflammation, fibrosis, and necrosis of the lung.

- **Emphysema:** Permanent enlargement of air space as the result of alveolar destruction and subsequent reduction of available surface area for gas exchange. Most common cause is prolonged exposure to noxious agents such as cigarette smoke.

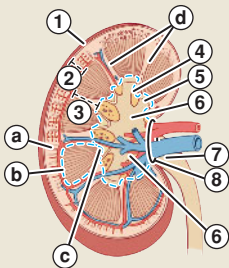
Urinary System

11

INTRODUCTION

Composed of two kidneys, two ureters, the urinary bladder, and the urethra, the urinary system plays a critical role in blood filtration, maintenance of fluid homeostasis, regulation of blood pressure, erythrocyte formation, and vitamin D conversion to an active form. Functionally, the urinary system is subdivided into the excretory portion (nephrons), responsible for blood filtration and production of urine, and the collecting portion (collecting ducts, calyces, ureter, bladder, and urethra), which receives, transports, and temporarily stores formed urine until excretion.


THE URINARY SYSTEM

KIDNEY		
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
Bean-shaped, bilateral, red/brown organs 1. Capsule: Dense connective tissue	 Blood filtration, blood volume and pressure regulation, maintenance of body fluid homeostasis, production of erythropoietin, conversion of vitamin D to an active form 1. Protection	Retroperitoneal, vertebral level T12–L3 on either side of vertebral column (right kidney—slightly lower) 1. Outermost covering of the kidney

(continued)

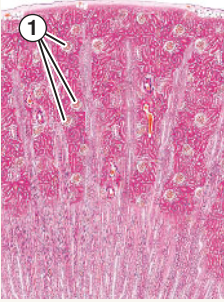
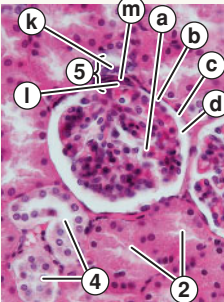
KIDNEY (continued)

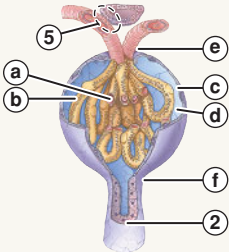
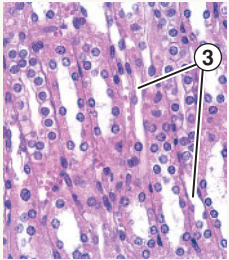
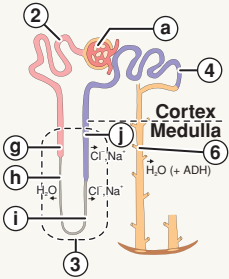
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
<p>2. Cortex: Red/brown outer layer</p> <p>a. Medullary rays: Linear striations extending from medulla</p> <p>3. Medulla: Pink/lighter brown inner layer composed of:</p> <p>b. Renal pyramids: Pyramidal pink/light brown lobes</p> <p>c. Renal papilla: Apex of the renal pyramid</p> <p>d. Renal columns: Extensions of cortical tissue in the medulla</p> <p>4. Renal sinus: Space filled with calyces and adipose tissue</p>		<p>2. Various stages of urine formation</p> <p>a. Collection, drainage, concentration of urine</p> <p>3. Urine concentration</p> <p>b. Regulation and maintenance of hyperosmolality of the interstitium</p> <p>c. Drainage of formed urine into minor calyx</p> <p>d. Extension of the cortical tissue into the medulla</p> <p>4. Contain, protect, and insulate calyces, blood vessels</p>	<p>2. Deep to capsule</p> <p>a. Throughout cortex in radial arrangement</p> <p>3. Deep to cortex</p> <p>b. Several throughout medulla</p> <p>c. Tip/apex of the renal pyramid: Extend out into renal sinus</p> <p>d. In the medulla, in between the renal pyramids</p> <p>4. Center of the kidney</p>

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
5. Minor calyx: Short, small, cup-like structures each abutting renal papilla		5. Collect formed urine from collecting ducts	5. In renal sinus, at each renal papilla
6. Major calyx: Short, bigger tubular structure		6. Collect urine from minor calyces	6. In renal sinus, distal to minor calyces
7. Renal pelvis: Funnel-shaped drainage		7. Collect urine from major calyces and drain into ureter	7. Renal sinus, near hilum
8. Renal hilum: Indentation, depression		8. Ureter, vessels, and nerves enter and exit the kidney	8. Medial surface of the kidney
<i>Microscopic features: Nephron</i>			
1. Renal corpuscle: Spherical structures a. Glomerulus: Loops of fenestrated capillaries b. Visceral layer of Bowman capsule: Podocytes		1. Filtration of blood a. Flow of blood; initial passage of filtrate through fenestrae and endothelial cell b. Allow filtrate to pass between filtration slit to enter the urinary space	1. Throughout renal cortex a. Inside the renal corpuscle b. Coating outside of the glomerular capillary loops

(continued)


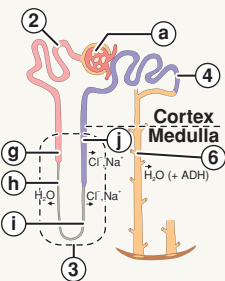
KIDNEY (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features: Nephron</i>			
c. Parietal layer of Bowman capsule: Simple squamous epithelium		c. Containment of the filtrate	c. Outermost layer of the renal corpuscle
d. Urinary space		d. Reception, storage of filtrate	d. Between the visceral and parietal layers of Bowman capsule
e. Vascular pole		e. Entry and exit point for afferent and efferent arterioles	e. Opposite the urinary pole
f. Urinary pole		f. Filtrate in urinary space enter the PCT	f. Beginning of the PCT
2. Proximal convoluted tubule (PCT): Simple cuboidal epithelium with larger, eosinophilic cells and "fuzzy" luminal border (brush border)		2. Majority of NaCl, fluid resorption; resorb amino acids, sugars, polypeptides; endocytose large peptides	2. Throughout renal cortex: More toward medulla
3. Loop of Henle		3. Concentration of urine	3. Begin and end in the renal cortex, but the loop extends into the medulla

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features: Nephron</i>		
g. Thick descending limb: Simple cuboidal epithelium, permeable to water, impermeable to salt		g. Similar to PCT, but to a lesser extent
g. Cortex and medulla		
h. Thin descending limb: Simple squamous epithelium		h. Resorb water, increase filtrate osmolality, impermeable to NaCl
h. Medulla		
i. Thin ascending limb: Simple squamous epithelium		i. Resorb NaCl, impermeable to water, maintain the hyperosmotic interstitium
i. Medulla		
j. Thick ascending limb: Simple cuboidal epithelium, permeable to NaCl, impermeable to water		j. Resorb NaCl, Ca ²⁺ , Mg ²⁺
j. Medulla and cortex		
4. Distal convoluted tubule (DCT): Simple cuboidal epithelium		4. Resorb Na ⁺ , bicarbonate ions; secrete K ⁺ , ammonium
4. Throughout renal cortex: More in the superficial portion		

(continued)

KIDNEY (continued)

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Microscopic features: Nephron</i>			
<p>5. Juxtaglomerular (JG) apparatus</p> <p>k. Macula densa: Accumulation of thin, columnar cells within DCT</p>		<p>5. Vascular pole of each renal corpuscle</p> <p>k. Wall of the DCT in contact with lacis cells</p>	
<p>l. JG cells: Smooth muscle cells of the afferent arteriole</p> <p>m. Lacis cells: Thin spindle cells</p>		<p>5. Blood pressure regulation</p> <p>k. Monitor Na^+ concentration in the forming urine, regulate glomerular filtration rate (GFR) and release of renin from JG cells</p>	<p>5. Monitor Na^+ concentration in the forming urine, regulate glomerular filtration rate (GFR) and release of renin from JG cells</p>
<p>6. Collecting tubules, ducts: Simple cuboidal to columnar epithelium</p>		<p>l. Secrete renin in response to decreased blood volume/pressure</p> <p>m. Structural support; phagocytose cellular debris, residues</p> <p>6. Urine concentration, acid-base balance regulation</p>	<p>l. Wall of the afferent arteriole in contact with lacis cells</p> <p>m. Between macula densa and JG cells</p> <p>6. Cortex and medulla</p>

Additional Concepts

- Excretory portion of the urinary system:** Composed of approximately 2 million nephrons in each kidney that actively filter blood and produce urine.

- **Collecting portion of the urinary system:** Composed of the collecting tubules, ducts, minor and major calyces, renal pelvis, ureters, urinary bladder, and urethra.
- **Nephron:** Structural and functional unit of the kidney composed of the following segments (FIG. 11-1):
 - **Renal corpuscle:** Spherical structure made of glomerulus surrounded by a double-layered Bowman capsule where initial blood filtration occurs.
 - **Proximal convoluted tubule:** Much of resorption and secretion occurs here.
 - **Loop of Henle:** Where concentration of urine takes place.
 - **Distal convoluted tubule:** Where resorption, acid-base balance occurs.
 - **Juxtaglomerular apparatus:** Composed of macula densa of the DCT, JG cells of the afferent arteriolar smooth muscle, and lacis

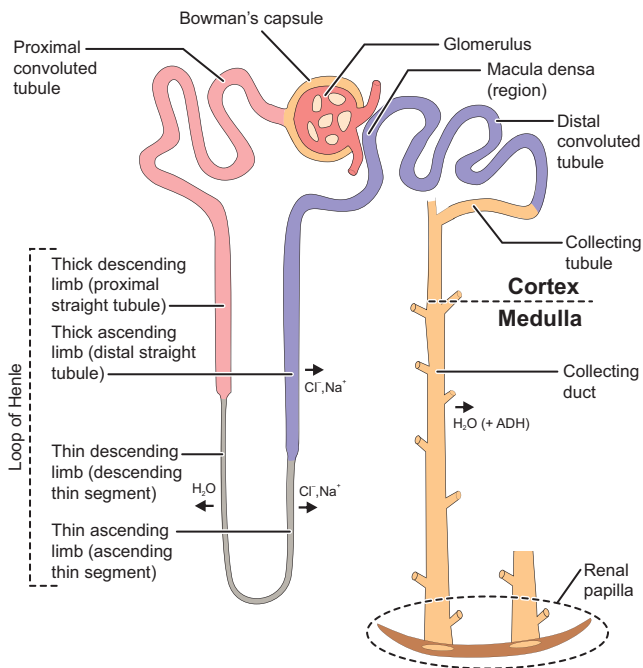


Figure 11-1. Nephron. (From Cui D. *Atlas of Histology*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2009:231.)

cells. Regulates blood volume and pressure via renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system.

- **Collecting tubules and ducts:** Though they belong to the collecting portion of the urinary system, urine concentration still takes place under the regulation of the posterior pituitary hormone, antidiuretic hormone (ADH)/vasopressin.
- **Glomerular filtration barrier:** Layers through which blood filtrate passes to enter the urinary space. Composed of glomerular endothelium, basement membrane, and podocyte filtration slits of the visceral layer of the Bowman capsule. The basement membrane in particular plays a critical role in restricting the movement of large proteins and charged molecules (FIG. 11-2).
- **Cortical nephrons:** Positioned closer to the capsule with the loop of Henle traveling only a short distance into the medulla. Hence, urine produced is not as heavily concentrated.
- **Juxtamedullary nephrons:** Positioned closer to the medulla with the loop of Henle traveling deep into the medulla. Hence, urine produced is more concentrated.
- **Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system:** Regulates sodium homeostasis, glomerular filtration rate, and water resorption. In response to blood volume/pressure decrease and/or low sodium intake, juxtaglomerular cells of the juxtaglomerular apparatus secrete renin. Renin converts circulating angiotensinogen to angiotensin I, which is then converted to an active form, angiotensin II, in the lungs. Angiotensin II then stimulates aldosterone release from the adrenal zona glomerulosa. Aldosterone stimulates increased sodium and

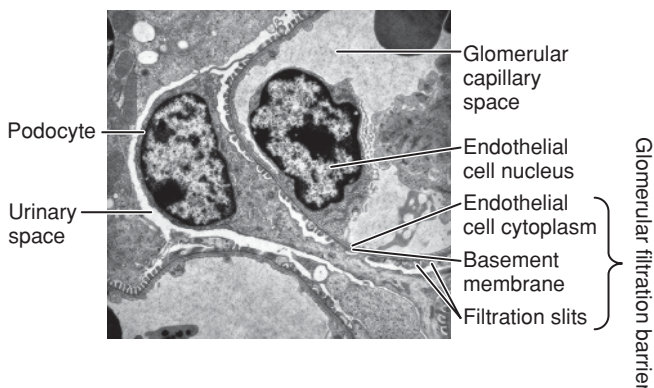


Figure 11-2. Glomerular filtration barrier. (From Eroschenko VP. *diFiore's Atlas of Histology with Functional Correlations*. 12th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2009:435.)

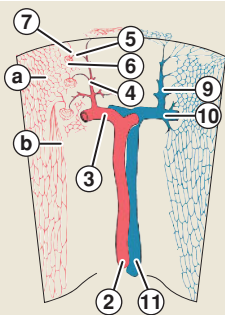
water resorption at the DCT and collecting ducts, thereby increasing blood volume and pressure.

- **Vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone):** A hormone released from the neurohypophysis (posterior pituitary) in response to reduced blood volume and increased plasma osmolality. ADH increases the water channel (aquaporin 2) assembly in the collecting tubules and ducts, allowing more water resorption and retention in the body. Pituitary tumors that cause reduced ADH production result in hypervolumic, hypo-osmotic urine formation and associated polyuria and polydipsia.

Clinical Significance

- **Urinalysis:** Performed to screen for the presence of microorganisms, crystals, blood cells (hematuria), protein (proteinuria), and other abnormal chemical composition and pH that may indicate renal disease.
- **Diabetic nephropathy:** Common complication in patients with diabetes mellitus. Characterized by compromised glomerular filtration with thickening of the glomerular basement membrane, atherosclerotic arterioles, and glomerular sclerosis, eventually resulting in renal insufficiency and/or failure.

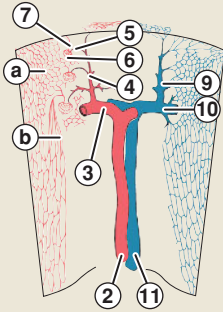
BLOOD SUPPLY TO THE KIDNEY

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Blood supply</i>		
1. Renal artery 2. Interlobar artery 3. Arcuate artery	 <p>1. Carry blood from the aorta to the kidney</p> <p>2. Carry blood into each lobe of the kidney</p> <p>3. Carry blood to the cortex-medulla boundary</p>	1. Arises directly from either side of the abdominal aorta between vertebral levels L1-L2 2. Renal sinus and renal columns 3. Runs along the base of the renal pyramid

(continued)

BLOOD SUPPLY TO THE KIDNEY (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Blood supply</i>		
4. Interlobular artery	4. Carry blood to each lobule of the kidney	4. Runs perpendicular to arcuate artery toward the capsule
5. Afferent arteriole	5. Carry blood into the renal corpuscle	5. Vascular pole
6. Glomerulus	6. Take part in the initiation of blood filtration	6. Within the renal corpuscle
7. Efferent arteriole	7. Carry blood away from the renal corpuscle	7. Vascular pole
8. a. Peritubular capillaries	8. a. Pick up water and minerals resorbed from PCT, DCT, and collecting tubules and ducts	8. a. Cortex
b. Vasa recta	b. Pick up water and minerals resorbed from loop of Henle and collecting tubules and ducts	b. Renal pyramids of the medulla
9. Interlobular veins	9. Drain blood from peritubular capillaries	9. Run along the interlobular artery



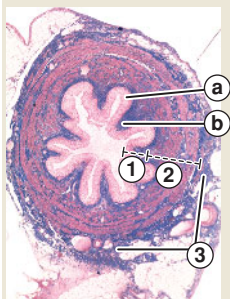
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Blood supply</i>		
10. Arcuate veins	10. Drain blood from vasa recta and interlobular veins	10. Run along the base of the renal pyramid
11. Interlobar veins	11. Drain blood from arcuate veins	11. Renal sinus and renal columns
12. Renal veins	12. Drain blood from each lobe and carry it to inferior vena cava	12. Enter inferior vena cava at vertebral levels L1–L2

Clinical Significance

- Lobar or lobular necrosis of the kidney:** Due to sharp, 90-degree angles of the arcuate and interlobular arteries, thrombi can easily lodge at the branching junctions. Because of the organization of the kidney blood supply (one interlobar artery supplying one lobe, one interlobular artery supplying one lobule), such blockage causes a sharply demarcated area of necrosis without disseminated impact on the rest of the kidney.

URETER

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
Long, pink, fleshy tube with a narrow lumen	Conduct urine from renal pelvis to the urinary bladder	Extends from renal pelvis to the urinary bladder; retroperitoneal



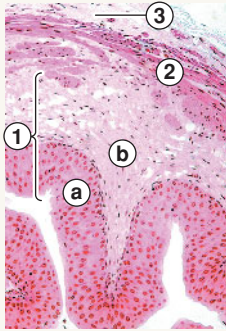
(continued)

URETER (continued)

Microscopic features

Composed of three layers:

1. Mucosa
 - a. Epithelium: Transitional epithelium
 - b. Lamina propria: Loose to dense connective tissue
2. Muscular layer: Smooth muscles
3. Serosa and adventitia: Loose connective tissue with and without mesothelium, respectively



1. Line the lumen
 - a. Line, protect the mucosa, allow some distension
 - b. Protection and support of epithelium
 2. Peristalsis ensures directed flow of urine
 3. Protection and adhesion of ureter to surrounding tissues
1. Innermost layer
 - a. Directly in contact with the luminal content
 - b. Deep to epithelium
 2. Middle layer
 3. Outermost layer

URINARY BLADDER

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
Distensible organ; changes size and shape as it fills	Temporary urine storage, regulation of micturition	Pelvic cavity; posterior to pubic symphysis; anterior to rectum in males, uterus in females

Macroscopic features

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
Distensible organ; changes size and shape as it fills	Temporary urine storage, regulation of micturition	Pelvic cavity; posterior to pubic symphysis; anterior to rectum in males, uterus in females

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
1. Two ureteric orifices		1. Urine entrance into the bladder. As bladder fills, openings are closed shut by bladder wall musculature.	1. Posterior wall of the bladder wall
2. Urethral orifice		2. Urine outlet	2. Inferior pole of the bladder
3. Trigone: Triangular region bounded by the three openings		3. Remain relatively unchanged during distension	3. Triangular region bounded by the three openings
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
Composed of three layers:		4. Line the lumen	4. Innermost layer
4. Mucosa		a. Line, protect, allow distension	a. In contact with the luminal content
a. Epithelium: Transitional epithelium		b. Protect and support epithelium	b. Deep to epithelium
b. Lamina propria: Loose to dense connective tissue		5. Peristalsis ensures directed flow of urine	5. Middle layer
5. Muscular layer: Smooth muscles			

URINARY BLADDER (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
6. Serosa and adventitia: Loose connective tissue with and without mesothelium, respectively	6. Protection and adhesion of ureter to surrounding tissues	6. Outermost layer

Additional Concepts

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	PCT	DCT	Collecting Tubules and Ducts
Tissue	Simple cuboidal epithelium	Simple cuboidal epithelium	Simple cuboidal to columnar epithelium
Lumen	Narrow; border is not clearly defined and "fuzzy"	Larger than PCT; border is more clearly defined than PCT	Same to larger than DCT; border is clearly defined
Cells	Large, eosinophilic cells with brush border; cell-cell borders are ill defined	Smaller than PCT cells; light pink-staining cytoplasm; ill-defined cell-cell border	Clear, pale-staining cuboidal to columnar cells; well-defined cell-cell borders

Clinical Significance

- **Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease:** Progressive formation and enlargement of cysts in the kidney and other organs that manifest clinical symptoms in the fourth decade of life. As the cysts overtake the kidney parenchyma, patients develop hypertension, renal insufficiency, and eventually renal failure.
- **Autosomal recessive (infantile/pediatric) polycystic kidney disease:** Formation of cysts in the collecting ducts and clinical presentation such as enlarged kidneys, abdominal mass, polyuria, and polydipsia in infancy and childhood.

Endocrine System


12

INTRODUCTION

The endocrine system is composed of a number of organs, clusters of or individual cells that produce and secrete hormones into the bloodstream to signal distant target cells or organs. Most of the endocrine units derive from the lining epithelial invaginations that eventually lose their ducts and connections to the lining epithelium. Fenestrated capillaries are common stromal components that pick up, transport and deliver hormones.


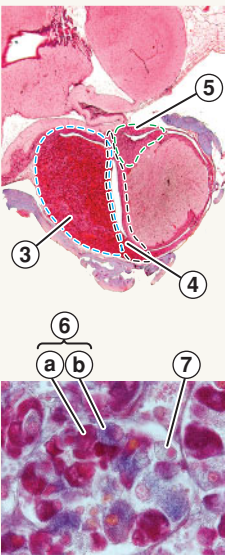
THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

The pituitary is considered to be the master endocrine gland because its hormones have many target organs, including other endocrine organs.

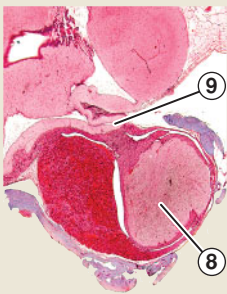
PITUITARY GLAND/HYPOPHYSIS			
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
Two distinct endocrine units: 1. Anterior pituitary (adenohypophysis/ anterior lobe): Pyramidal epithelioid cells arranged in ovoid clusters		Synthesis and release of nine hormones into bloodstream 1. Seven hormones: GH, prolactin, MSH, FSH, LH, ACTH, TSH	Inferior to hypothalamus: In sella turcica of the sphenoid bone A fold of dura mater, diaphragma sellae, forms a roof over the pituitary gland

(continued)

PITUITARY GLAND/HYPOPHYSIS (continued)

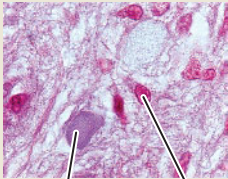
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
<p>2. Posterior pituitary (neurohypophysis/posterior lobe): Resembles neural tissue</p>		<p>2. Two hormones: ADH (vasopressin), oxytocin</p>
<i>Anterior pituitary/Adenohypophysis/Anterior lobe</i>		
<p>Divided into three regions:</p> <p>3. Pars distalis: Consists of chromophobes and both chromophils</p> <p>4. Pars intermedia: Consists of basophils and Rathke cysts</p> <p>5. Pars tuberalis: Mostly basophils</p> <p>Composed of three distinguishable endocrine cell types:</p>		<p>In response to hypothalamic hormones, synthesize and release appropriate hormones:</p> <p>3. GH, prolactin, FSH, LH, ACTH, TSH</p> <p>4. MSH</p> <p>5. FSH, LH</p> <p>3. Majority of anterior pituitary</p> <p>4. Small strip of glandular tissue between pars distalis and posterior pituitary</p> <p>5. Extension of anterior pituitary surrounding infundibulum</p>

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Anterior pituitary/Adenohypophysis/Anterior lobe</i>		
<p>6. Chromophils</p> <p>a. Acidophils: red to maroon staining cells</p> <p>b. Basophils: blue to purple staining cells</p> <p>7. Chromophobes: clear staining cells</p>	<p>6.</p> <p>a. GH, prolactin</p> <p>b. MSH, FSH, LH, ACTH, TSH</p> <p>7. Thought to be chromophils that have released all the secretory vesicles containing hormones</p>	<p>6.</p> <p>a. Pars distalis and pars tuberalis</p> <p>b. All three regions of anterior pituitary</p> <p>7. Pars distalis</p>
<i>Posterior pituitary/Neurohypophysis/Posterior lobe</i>		
<p>Divided into two regions</p> <p>8. Pars nervosa: Neural tissue: Neuropils, axon terminals, and pituicytes</p> <p>9. Infundibulum: Composed of axons of the hypothalamic neurons</p>	<p>Hormones produced from supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei of hypothalamus are stored in axon terminals (Herring bodies) until appropriate stimuli triggers secretion</p> <p>8. Store and release ADH (vasopressin) and oxytocin</p> <p>9. Connect pituitary to hypothalamus</p>	<p>8. Majority of the posterior pituitary</p> <p>9. Narrow stalk between hypothalamus and pituitary</p>



(continued)

PITUITARY GLAND/HYPOPHYSIS (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Posterior pituitary/Neurohypophysis/Posterior lobe</i>			
Two distinguishable structures		10. Store and release neurosecretory vesicles	10. Anucleate structures throughout pars nervosa
10. Herring bodies: Dilated axon terminals with neurosecretory vesicles			
11. Pituicytes: Glial cells of the pituitary		11. Similar function as astrocytes: Structural and functional support to the neural components	11. Nucleated cells (oval) throughout pars nervosa

GH, growth hormone; MSH, melanocyte-stimulating hormone; FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; LH, luteinizing hormone; ACTH, adrenocorticotropic hormone; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone; ADH, antidiuretic hormone.

Additional Concepts

- **Embryonic origin:** Adenohypophysis derives from the oral ectodermal invagination (Rathke pouch), whereas neurohypophysis derives from the diencephalon neural tissue down-growth, hence the histologic difference.
- **Hypothalamus:** Considered to be the master endocrine switch because it regulates the activity of the pituitary, the master endocrine gland
- **Blood supply:** Of functional significance, adenohypophysis does not have a direct blood supply; instead, it is supplied by the second capillary network of the hypophyseal portal system that first runs through the hypothalamic median eminence, carrying hypothalamic regulatory hormones to the adenohypophysis to influence its endocrine function (FIG. 12-1).

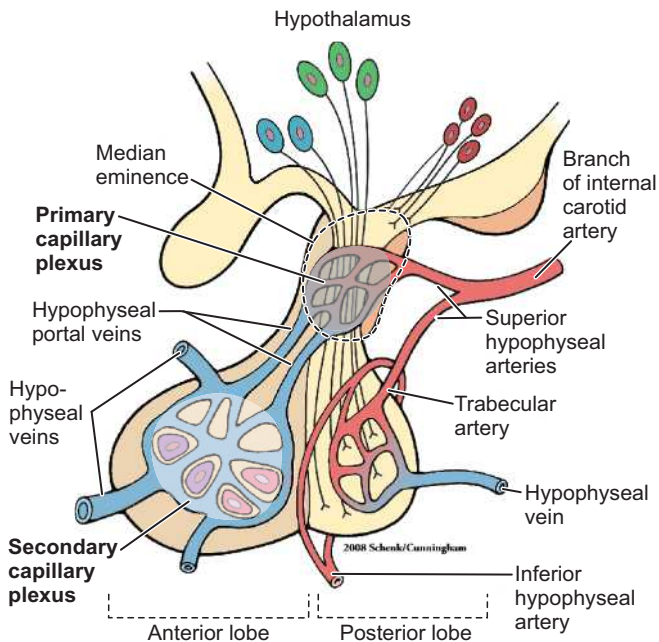


Figure 12-1. Blood supply to the pituitary gland.

MNEMONIC

GPA and My FLAT B

This phrase will help you remember the two types of chromophils of adenohypophysis and their hormone products:

Growth hormone and **P**rolactin from **A**cidophis.

MSH, FSH, LH, ACTH, and TSH from **B**asophi.

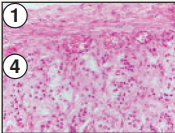
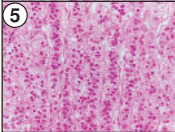
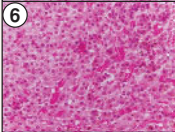
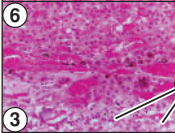
Clinical Significance

- **Pituitary adenomas:** Benign tumors of the anterior pituitary; may result in decreased or increased production of any of the pituitary hormones, causing wide variety and varying degrees of symptoms
- **Cushing disease:** Increased production of ACTH results in increased cortisol secretion by the adrenal glands, causing the characteristic pattern of weight gain in the trunk and face and other complex symptoms.

- **Gigantism:** Increased production of GH before the epiphyseal plates are calcified; results in above-average height.
- **Acromegaly:** Increased production of GH after the epiphyseal plates are calcified; results in enlarged and thickened facial bones, hands, and feet and visceral overgrowth.
- **Diabetes insipidus:** Tumors affecting the brain or neurohypophysis causing decreased ADH; results in polyuria, polydipsia, and many other signs and complications associated with dehydration.

ADRENAL GLAND

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
<p>Paired, triangular glands covered with:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Capsule: Dense connective tissue <p>Organized into:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Cortex: Slightly more cellular, outer layer 3. Medulla: Inner core containing loosely arranged chromaffin cells 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Coverage, protection, support <p>Synthesis and release of hormones into bloodstream</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Steroid hormones: mineralocorticoids, glucocorticoids, gonadocorticoids 3. Catecholamines 	<p>Positioned on top of each kidney</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Superficial-most, protective layer 2. Deep to capsule 3. Core of the gland
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
<p>Cortex is divided into three zones:</p> <p>Zona:</p>		<p>Synthesis and release of hormones:</p>	

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
4. Glomerulosa: Small pyramidal cells in ovoid clusters		4. Mineralocorticoids: Primarily aldosterone; regulates Na ⁺ , K ⁺ , water balance in distal tubules of the nephron	4. Thin, superficial region of the cortex, immediately under the capsule
5. Fasciculata: Bigger, round cells with vacuolated cytoplasm arranged in long, straight cords		5. Glucocorticoids: Primarily cortisol; increases gluconeogenesis and glycogenesis	5. Thick middle region of the cortex
6. Reticularis: Smaller cells, in anastomosing cords		6. Gonadocorticoids: Primarily DHEA	6. Thin region in contact with medulla
Medulla:		7. Epinephrine, norepinephrine	7. Throughout medulla
7. Chromaffin cells: Large, pale, modified postsynaptic neurons			

Additional Concepts

Dual blood supply for the medulla:

- Arterial blood from medullary arterioles
- Venous blood from the cortex; allows cortical hormones to influence adrenal medullary structure and function

MNEMONIC

Get Facts Right: Men are Glued to Gonads

This phrase represents the adrenal cortical layers and corresponding hormone products:

Glomerulosa/**F**asciculata/**R**eticularis: **M**ineralocorticoids/**G**lucocorticoids/**G**onadocorticoids

Clinical Significance

- **Pheochromocytoma:** A tumor of chromaffin cells producing excess catecholamines, resulting in hypertension, anxiety, arrhythmias, digestive dysfunction, etc.
- **Addison disease:** An adrenal insufficiency resulting from reduced production of steroid hormones from the adrenal cortex that causes symptoms such as hypotension, hyperpigmentation, fatigue, lightheadedness, weakness, and weight loss

THYROID GLAND

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
1. Right and left lobes connected by isthmus		1. Production, storage, and secretion of thyroid hormones T_3 and T_4 and secretion of calcitonin	1. Inferior to the thyroid cartilage, anterior to the trachea
2. Connective tissue capsule and septa		2. Surround the entire thyroid and separate parenchyma into lobules	2. Capsule surrounds the surface; septa irregularly extends into thyroid.
3. Spherical follicles of varying size filled with gelatinous colloid form the parenchyma		3. Storage of colloid, iodide; hormone production and secretion	3. Throughout thyroid parenchyma

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
4. Follicles composed of cuboidal to squamous follicular cells		4. Storage of colloid, iodide; production of hormones T_3 , T_4 ; basal metabolism regulation	4. Lining of the follicles
5. Parafollicular cells (clear cells/C cells) in small groups or individual cells		5. Production of calcitonin; inhibit osteoclasts and decrease blood calcium level	5. Usually in between the follicles, sometimes in the follicular epithelium

Additional Concepts

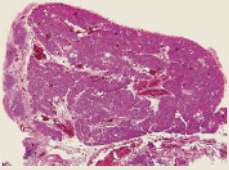
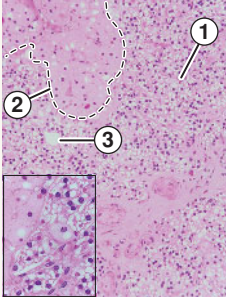
HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	Thyroid Gland	Active Mammary Gland
Parenchyma	Eosinophilic, colloid-filled follicles and no ducts	Vesicular appearance of lumen in dilated acini; areas of undilated acini and ducts are present
Stroma	Capsule on the surface; adipocytes and other connective tissue components are rare.	No capsule; adipocytes and other connective tissue components are present

Clinical Significance

- **Hyperthyroidism (toxic goiter/Graves disease):** Autoantibodies stimulate follicular cells to release excess amount of thyroid hormones resulting in thyroid hypertrophy (goiter), protrusion of the eyeballs, increased metabolism, weight loss, tachycardia, etc.
- **Hypothyroidism:** Reduced thyroid hormone production due to lack of iodine or autoantibodies that triggers apoptosis of follicular cells resulting in thyroid hypertrophy (goiter), weight gain, and mental and physical sluggishness.

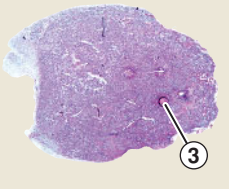
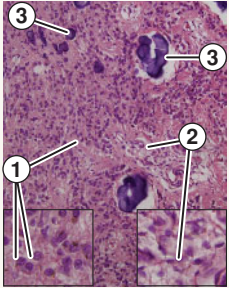
PARATHYROID GLAND

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
Four small glands composed of densely cellular parenchyma with connective tissue capsule and septa		Production and secretion of parathyroid hormone (PTH)	Posterior surface of the thyroid
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Chief cells with clear cytoplasm and relatively large nuclei form the major component of the organ Oxyphil cells: Larger, eosinophilic cytoplasm; small, dark nuclei Adipocytes: Numbers increase with age 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Production and secretion of PTH; indirectly stimulate osteoclasts and increase blood calcium level Unknown Fat storage 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Throughout the organ in clusters or cords Scattered throughout the organ in small groups or as individual cells Scattered in small groups or as individual cells

Clinical Significance

- **Hypercalcemia:** Elevated blood calcium level commonly resulting from hyperparathyroidism. Complications include kidney stones, constipation, and osteitis fibrosa cystica.

PINEAL GLAND

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
Small, fleshy ovoid neuroendocrine gland with occasionally visible macroscopic brain sands		Production and secretion of melatonin; regulate circadian rhythms	Posterior midline extension of the epithalamus
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Pinealocytes: Modified neurons with ovoid nuclei and pale cytoplasm Neuroglial cells (pineal astrocytes) resemble astrocytes Brain sand (corpora arenacea): Dark, calcified bodies of varying size 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Production and secretion of melatonin Support Unknown 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Throughout the organ Throughout the organ, more around capillaries Randomly scattered

Additional Concepts

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	Parathyroid Gland	Pineal Gland	Prostate Gland
Parenchyma	Densely cellular organ, composed of chief cells and oxyphil cells, no calcified concretions	Resembles neural tissue with pinealocytes and glial cells; concretions (corpora arenacea) present	Exocrine glandular organization with ducts and distinct boundary between glands and stroma; concretions (corpora amylacea) present
Stroma	Scant stroma; adipocytes increase in number with age	Glial cells and neuropils	Mostly dense connective tissue

Clinical Significance

- **Medical imaging:** Pineal glands are easy to spot due to central location in the brain and radio-opaque calcifications on computed tomography and x-rays and serve as a useful landmark.

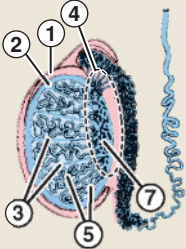
Male Reproductive System

13

INTRODUCTION

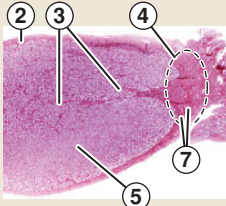
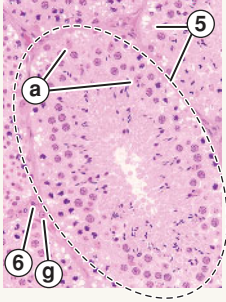
The male reproductive system consists of two testes, in which spermatozoa and male hormones are produced; a series of genital ducts that drain and deliver semen products to the urethra; accessory glands that secrete the majority of the fluid component of semen; and the penis, the copulatory organ. At puberty, an increase in sex hormones triggers the secondary male sex characteristics to develop and initiates sperm production in the testes. Sperm production is continuous and steady throughout the rest of adult males' lives.

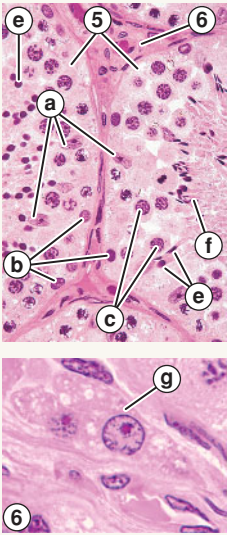
THE MALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

TESTIS		
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
Paired oval organ 1. Tunica vaginalis: Thin, delicate, double-layered serous membrane 2. Tunica albuginea: Dense connective tissue capsule		Spermatozoa and male hormone production 1. Allowing movements of testis within scrotal sac and reducing friction 2. Surrounding and protecting the testes
		Scrotal sac 1. Anterolateral portion of each testis 2. Deep to tunica vaginalis

(continued)

TESTIS (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
<p>3. Septa: Extensions of the capsule into the parenchyma</p> <p>4. Mediastinum testis: Thickened dense connective tissue</p>		<p>3. Dividing testis parenchyma into lobules</p> <p>4. Housing rete testis and forming a point of exit</p>	<p>3. Extend into the testis</p> <p>4. Posterior thickening of the tunica albuginea</p>
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
<p>5. Seminiferous tubules: Series of long, coiled tubules lined with germinal epithelium (resemble pseudostratified columnar epithelium)</p> <p>a. Sertoli cells: Tall, large, indistinct cell boundary; oval to triangular, euchromatic nuclei; distinct nucleoli</p>		<p>5. Production of germ cells, the spermatozoa</p> <p>a. Form tight junctions with each other, compartmentalize the tubule to basal and luminal sides, form testis-blood barrier, support spermatogenesis and spermiogenesis, remove debris</p>	<p>5. Within each lobule</p> <p>a. Throughout seminiferous tubules, extend the thickness of the tubule wall</p>

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Microscopic features</i>			
<p>b. Spermatogonia: Small, round cells, homogenous chromatin in the nuclei</p>		<p>b. Basal-most portion of the seminiferous tubules below the Sertoli cell tight junctions</p>	
<p>c. Primary spermatocytes: Larger cells with distinct thread-like chromosomes</p>		<p>c. Diploid cells undergoing meiosis I</p>	<p>c. Above the Sertoli cell tight junctions</p>
<p>d. Secondary spermatocytes: Smaller cells often in metaphase, difficult to identify due to short duration of meiosis II</p>		<p>d. Haploid products of meiosis I</p>	<p>d. Closer to the lumen</p>
<p>e. Spermatids: Varying morphology</p>		<p>e. Haploid products of meiosis II, undergoing spermiogenesis</p>	<p>e. Approach the lumen</p>

(continued)

TESTIS (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
f. Spermatozoa: Elongated, condensed nuclei, flagella	f. Final product of spermatogenesis	f. Present in the lumen of seminiferous tubules and in epididymis
6. Stroma: Connective tissue between seminiferous tubules	6. Support seminiferous tubules	6. In between seminiferous tubules
g. Leydig cells: Elongated, polyhedral cells; round, euchromatic nuclei; numerous vesicles	g. Produce and release testosterone	g. Throughout stroma
7. Rete testis: Series of irregular channels lined by simple cuboidal epithelium	7. Channel for conducting spermatozoa from straight tubules to efferent ducts	7. Medias-tinum testis

Additional Concepts

- Spermatogenesis:** Process of meiosis in which spermatogonium undergoes mitosis to give rise to the primary spermatocytes that undergo meiosis I, producing two haploid secondary spermatocytes. Secondary spermatocytes undergo meiosis II to produce four haploid spermatids. Spermatids undergo the process of morphologic transformation called spermiogenesis in which the nuclei are condensed,

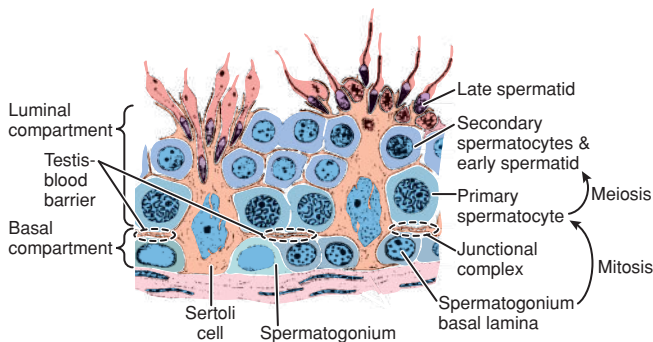
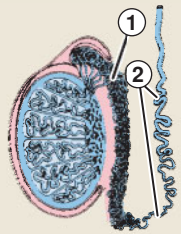


Figure 13-1. Seminiferous tubule: Spermatogenesis and testis-blood barrier. (From Ross MH, Pawlina W. *Histology: A Text and Atlas*. 6th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2009:791.)

the majority of the cytoplasm is shed, acrosome caps containing digestive enzymes form over the nuclei, and flagella are formed. Approximately 300 million sperm cells are produced daily (FIG. 13-1).

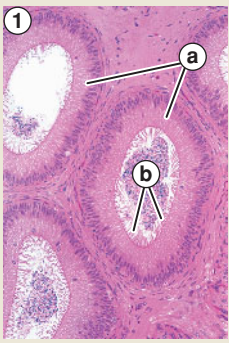
- **Testis-blood barrier:** Formed by tight junctions between Sertoli cells forming a physical boundary between the basal and luminal compartments of the seminiferous tubules. As spermatogenesis progresses, genetically different, haploid spermatocytes are moved into the luminal compartment of the seminiferous tubules and become isolated and protected from the immune system (see FIG. 13-1).

GENITAL DUCTS

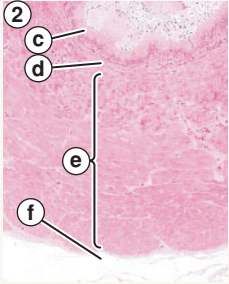
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Epididymis</i>		
1. Comma-shaped structure made of a long coiled tube a. Pseudostratified columnar epithelium	 1. Storage, maturation, transport of spermatozoa a. Absorption and secretion of fluid, phagocytosis of cell debris	1. Posterior surface of the testis a. Lines the lumen

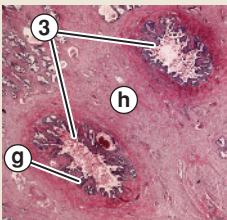
(continued)

GENITAL DUCTS (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<p>b. Stereocilia: Long microvilli projecting into the lumen from the epithelial cells</p>		<p>b. Increase surface area</p>	<p>b. Extend from the epithelial cell surface into the lumen</p>

Vas (ductus) deferens

<p>2. Paired, long, thick, muscular tube</p>		<p>2. Conduct spermatozoa from epididymis to the ejaculatory ducts</p>	<p>2. Extend from the tail of epididymis to the prostate gland</p>
<p>c. Pseudostratified columnar epithelium with stereocilia</p> <p>d. Lamina propria: Connective tissue</p> <p>e. Thick smooth muscle layers</p> <p>f. Adventitia: Loose connective tissue</p>		<p>c. Limited absorption, secretion</p> <p>d. Support the epithelium</p> <p>e. Contract to propel spermatozoa</p> <p>f. Carry blood supply, adhere to surrounding structures</p>	<p>c. Lines the lumen</p> <p>d. Under the epithelium</p> <p>e. Middle layer</p> <p>f. Outermost layer; blend in with surrounding connective tissues</p>

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Ejaculatory ducts</i>		
<p>3. Continuation of vas deferens within the prostate gland</p> <p>g. Pseudostratified columnar epithelium</p> <p>h. Connective tissue blends in with that of the prostate</p>		<p>3. Mix and transport spermatozoa and seminal vesicle secretions into the prostatic urethra</p>
		<p>3. Obliquely traverse prostate from superior-posterior entrance of the vas deferens to central mid-point of the prostatic urethra</p>

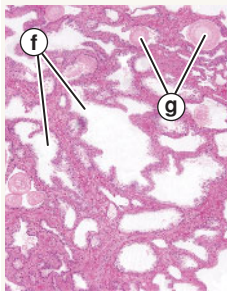
Additional Concepts

- Ideal temperature for spermatogenesis:** 2°C to 3°C below body temperature. Elevated testicular temperature may cause infertility. Cooler temperature is maintained by the pampiniform venous plexus of the scrotum and spermatic cord that cool the arterial blood as it travels toward the testis. Cremaster muscles in the spermatic cord contract and relax to pull the testes closer or away from the body to maintain the steady temperature. Dartos muscles of the scrotum also contract in cold temperature to reduce heat loss.
- Path of spermatozoa:** Seminiferous tubules → straight tubules (tubuli recti) → rete testis → efferent tubules → epididymis → vas deferens → ejaculatory ducts → prostatic urethra → membranous urethra → penile urethra
- Vasectomy:** A relatively simple outpatient surgical procedure for male sterilization that involves cutting into the scrotum to isolate vasa deferentia and cutting them to ensure no spermatozoa can reach the distal ducts. The volume of semen is usually unaffected by the procedure, but no sperm cells are present in the ejaculate.

ACCESSORY GLANDS

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Seminal vesicles</i>			
<p>1. Paired glands composed of coiled secretory tubules</p> <p>a. Mucosal lining varies from simple to pseudostratified columnar epithelium</p> <p>b. Lamina propria: Thin, loose connective tissue</p> <p>c. Muscularis layer: Smooth muscles</p>	 	<p>1. Production of milky seminal fluid contributing 70% of the volume of semen</p> <p>a. Production of fructose-rich secretion</p> <p>b. Support the epithelium</p> <p>c. Contract to expel secretions into the ejaculatory ducts</p>	<p>1. Posterior wall of the bladder</p> <p>a. Lumen</p> <p>b. Under the epithelium</p> <p>c. Outside of the lamina propria</p>
<i>Prostate gland</i>			
<p>2. Oval to pyramidal organ</p> <p>d. Ejaculatory ducts: Continuation of vas deferens within the prostate</p>		<p>2. Contribute 25% to 30% of the volume of semen</p> <p>d. Deliver spermatozoa and seminal vesicle secretions to prostatic urethra</p>	<p>2. Inferior to urinary bladder</p> <p>d. Traverse prostate obliquely from superior-lateral to mid-portion of the prostatic urethra</p>

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Prostate gland</i>		
e. Prostatic urethra: Portion of the urethra traversing the prostate	e. Conduct urine during micturition and semen during ejaculation	e. Midline of prostate from urinary bladder to membranous urethra
f. Prostatic glands: Compound tubuloacinar glands, simple to pseudostratified columnar epithelium	f. Secrete clear, slightly alkaline fluid	f. Throughout prostate
g. Prostatic concretions (corpora amylacea): Round, calcified acellular structures	g. No known function, increase in number with age	g. Throughout the lumen of the prostate glands



Additional Concepts

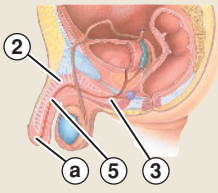

Prostatic zones:

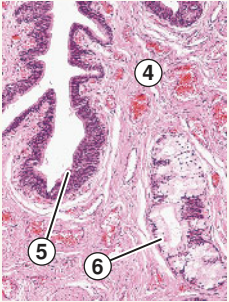
- **Central zone:** Areas of the prostate immediately surrounding ejaculatory ducts containing some prostate glands. Rarely affected by inflammation or carcinomas
- **Peripheral zone:** Areas surrounding the central zone and posterolateral portions of the prostate containing most of the prostate glands. Most affected by prostatic carcinomas and inflammation
- **Transitional zone:** Small areas surrounding the prostatic urethra containing small amounts of prostate glands and some mucous glands. Site of prostate gland hyperplasia that causes benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH)
- **Periurethral zone:** Areas anterolateral to the prostatic urethra that may be affected in later stage of BPH, further compressing the urethra and restricting urine flow

- **Fibromuscular zone:** Superior anterior strip-like region composed of dense irregular connective tissue, intermixed smooth muscle fibers, and little to no prostatic glands

Clinical Significance

- **BPH:** Almost always occurs in the transitional zone. Due to its proximity to the prostatic urethra, hyperplasia in this zone constricts the urethra, resulting in difficulty associated with urination. BPH occurs in a large percentage of the aging male population. Treatments vary from noninvasive medications that relax smooth muscles of the prostate to various surgical options to obliterate or remove the hypertrophic areas of prostate.
- **Prostatic carcinoma:** Almost always arises from the peripheral zone and is one of the most common cancers in the male. Due to the distance of the peripheral zone from the prostatic urethra, prostatic carcinoma does not affect urination until in the later stage after the tumor has reached a large size. Prostate-specific antigen (PSA) testing increases the early detection of prostatic carcinoma.

PENIS		
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
<p>Composed of three cylindrical erectile tissues</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Tunica albuginea: Dense connective tissue capsule 2. Corpora cavernosa: Paired erectile cylinders 3. Corpus spongiosum: Single erectile cylinder <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Glans penis: Terminal dilatation of corpus spongiosum 	 <p>Urination and copulation</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Surround each erectile cylinder, form a capsule 2. Fill with blood to achieve erection 3. Fill with blood to achieve erection <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Form the dilated tip of the penis 	<p>External genitalia</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Outside of each erectile cylinder 2. Dorsum of the penis 3. Ventral midline of the penis <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Tip of the penis
		

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Microscopic features</i>		
4. Erectile tissues: Irregular, cavernous spaces lined with endothelium		4. Throughout corpora cavernosa and corpus spongiosum
5. Penile urethra: Lined with pseudostratified columnar epithelium		5. In the middle and through the length of corpus spongiosum
6. Glands of Littre: Series of small, mucous-secreting glands		6. Scattered throughout corpus spongiosum and open into penile urethra
	4. Fill with blood to achieve erection	
	5. Conduct urine and semen	
	6. Secrete mucus into the penile urethra	

Additional Concepts

- **Penile erection:** Occurs through parasympathetic stimulation that relaxes smooth muscles of the erectile tissues and dilation of arteries that deliver blood into the erectile bodies. As the cavernous spaces within the corpora cavernosa and corpus spongiosum fill with blood, the tissues compress the venous vessels against the tunica albuginea, therefore preventing blood drainage and achieving erection.
- **Termination of erection:** Sympathetic stimulation initiates contraction of smooth muscles of the erectile tissues and arteries, decreasing blood flow into the erectile tissues. Reduced pressure releases compression on the veins, allowing drainage of excess blood.

Clinical Significance

- **Erectile dysfunction:** An inability to achieve and/or maintain penile erection that may result from a multitude of causes ranging from psychological issues and blood pressure–related conditions to parasympathetic nerve damage. The active ingredient of Viagra enhances the smooth muscle relaxation within erectile tissues by increasing the effect of nitrogen oxide. In case of nerve damage, Viagra has no curative effect on achieving erection.

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	Rete Testis	Epididymis	Seminal Vesicles
Epithelia	Simple cuboidal epithelium, may resemble pseudostratified columnar epithelium in crowded areas, no stereocilia	Pseudostratified columnar epithelium with stereocilia	Varies from simple to pseudostratified columnar epithelium, no stereocilia
Mucosal folds	Moderate	Little to none	Extensive
Surrounding structures	Dense irregular connective tissue of the mediastinum testis, separating rete testes from each other. Nearby seminiferous tubules may be visible	Epididymis loops in various planes of section are present in close proximity. Small amount of connective tissue is present in between	One or more groups of highly folded mucosa are found surrounded and separated by a moderate amount of connective tissue

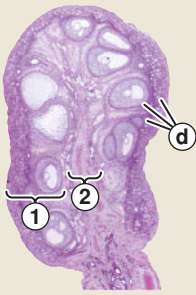
Female Reproductive System

14

INTRODUCTION

The female reproductive system consists of two ovaries, two uterine tubes, the uterus, the vagina, external genitalia, and mammary glands of the breasts. At puberty, increased female sex hormones induce the development of secondary sexual characteristics such as hyperplasia of the mammary glands and initiate regular ovarian and menstrual cycles. Under the influence of pituitary hormones, ovaries ovulate one oocyte per cycle and produce hormones that regulate the uterine lining to prepare for implantation in case of successful fertilization. In the absence of fertilization, the ovarian hormones decline and induce shedding of the uterine lining, which results in menstruation. Near the fifth decade of life, the ovarian and menstrual cycles end at menopause.

THE FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

OVARIES			
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Layers</i>			
Paired oval to almond-shaped, gray to pink organs		Gametogenesis and hormone production	Retroperitoneal in pelvic cavity on either side of the uterus
1. Cortex: More cellular, pink to gray layer containing follicles of varying size		1. Site of oogenesis and ovulation, hormone production	1. Outer layer of the ovary

(continued)

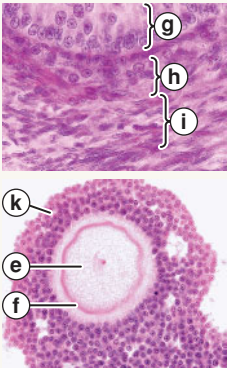
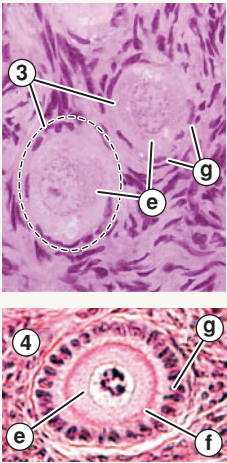
OVARIES (continued)

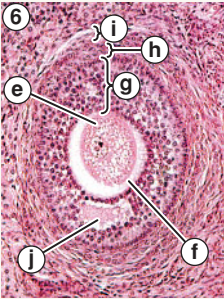
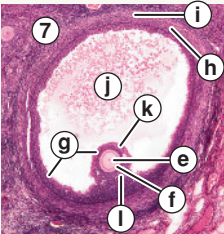
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Layers</i>			
<p>a. Germinal epithelium: Simple cuboidal to squamous mesothelium</p> <p>b. Tunica albuginea: Layer of dense irregular connective tissue</p> <p>c. Stroma: Cell-dense connective tissue</p> <p>d. Follicles: Spherical structures of varying size</p> <p>2. Medulla: Vascular, inner layer</p>		<p>a. Cover the outside of the ovary</p> <p>b. Form a protective capsule</p> <p>c. Provide supportive role for growing follicles; some differentiate into theca interna and externa cells</p> <p>d. Support growth of oocyte and prepare for ovulation</p> <p>2. Delivery of vascular and neural supplies</p>	<p>a. Outermost layer</p> <p>b. Deep to germinal epithelium</p> <p>c. Throughout cortex</p> <p>d. Throughout cortex</p> <p>2. Inner, central portion of the ovary</p>
<i>General features of the follicles</i>			
<p>e. Oocytes: Large, pale-staining cells with large nuclei</p>		<p>e. Complete meiosis with follicular growth</p>	<p>e. Within the follicle, usually in the center</p>

Structure	Function	Location
<i>General features of the follicles</i>		
f. Zona pellucida: Thick acellular layer surrounding oocyte	f. Form a protective shell around the oocyte	f. Immediately outside of the oocyte
g. Flat follicular cells or cuboidal granulosa cells	g. Protect and support the growing oocyte	g. Outside of the zona pellucida
h. Theca interna: Rounded stromal-driven cell layer	h. Secrete estrogen precursors	h. Outside of the granulosa cell layer, separated by a thin basement membrane
i. Theca externa: Spindle-shaped stromal cells and smooth muscle cells forming a capsule-like layer	i. Form a capsule-like structure, contract during ovulation	i. Outside of the theca interna; boundary is indistinct
j. Antrum: Fluid-filled space within granulosa cell layer	j. Fill with fluid, liquor folliculi, build pressure within the follicle, deliver nutrients	j. Within secondary follicles and Graafian follicles

(continued)

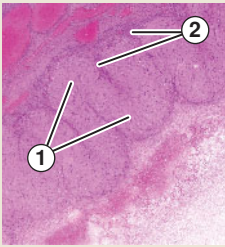
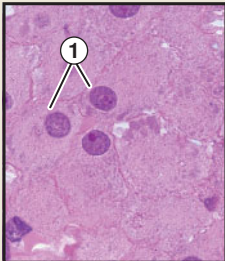
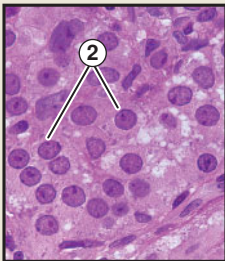
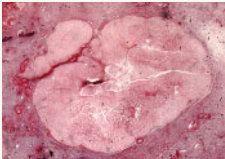
OVARIES (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>General features of the follicles</i>		
<p>k. Corona radiata: Collection of granulosa cells that surround oocytes in Graafian follicles</p> <p>l. Cumulus oophorus: Collection of granulosa cells</p>	 <p>k. Surround the oocyte</p> <p>l. Connect the oocyte and corona radiata to the rest of the granulosa cells</p>	<p>k. Outside of zona pellucida in Graafian follicles</p> <p>l. Between the corona radiata and the rest of the granulosa cells</p>
<i>Types of follicles</i>		
<p>3. Primordial follicle: Smallest, single layer of follicular cells surrounding a small oocyte without zona pellucida</p> <p>4. Unilaminar primary follicles: Slightly bigger oocyte with zona pellucida surrounded by a single layer of cuboidal follicular (granulosa) cells</p>	 <p>3. Contain oocytes arrested in meiosis I</p> <p>4. Contain and support growing oocytes</p>	<p>3. Cortical stroma near the tunica albuginea</p> <p>4-6. Follicles move deeper within the cortex as they grow in size to get closer to the blood supply in the medulla</p>

Structure	Function	Location
<i>General features of the follicles</i>		
<p>5. Multilaminar primary follicles: Growing oocyte, surrounded by more than one layer of cuboidal granulosa cells; theca interna forms</p>		<p>5. Contain and support growing oocytes; granulosa cells undergo mitosis, contributing to growing size of the follicle</p>
<p>6. Secondary (antral) follicles: Contain antra, fluid-filled spaces; theca interna and externa are seen</p>		<p>6. Contain and support growing oocytes, start to accumulate fluid to deliver nutrients to all cells within the enlarging follicle, produce estrogen</p>
<p>7. Graafian follicles: Large, single antrum, corona radiata, cumulus oophorus, distinct theca interna and externa</p>		<p>7. Contain and support oocytes that completed meiosis I and were arrested in metaphase II, build pressure within the follicle, increase production of estrogen, prepare for ovulation</p>
		<p>7. Move closer to the tunica albuginea with increasing size and protrude out into the peritoneal cavity immediately before ovulation</p>

(continued)

OVARIES (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Corpus luteum</i>			
<p>Yellow, relatively large and convoluted structure that forms after ovulation by the remaining cells of the follicle</p>		<p>Production and secretion of estrogen and progesterone</p>	<p>At the site of ovulation</p>
<p>1. Granulosa lutein cells: Form the bulk of the corpus luteum; derived from the granulosa cells of the follicle; enlarged, polygonal cells with abundant cytoplasm and large, euchromatic nuclei</p>		<p>1. Production and secretion of estrogen and progesterone, conversion of sex hormone precursors</p>	<p>1. Throughout corpus luteum</p>
<p>2. Theca lutein cells: Derived from theca interna, much smaller, oval to spindle-shaped cells</p>		<p>2. Production of progesterone and androgens</p>	<p>2. Periphery and in between the folds of granulosa lutein cells of the corpus luteum</p>
<i>Corpus albicans</i>			
<p>Small, white, firm structure; resembles dense irregular connective tissue</p>		<p>Remnant of corpus luteum degradation</p>	<p>Throughout ovarian cortex; numbers increase with age</p>

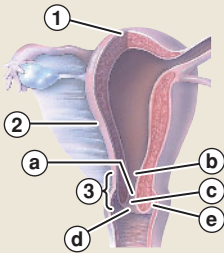
Additional Concepts

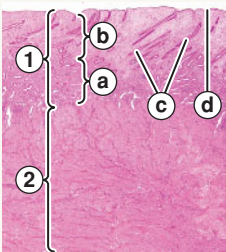
- **Oogenesis:** Occurs during early fetal development. At birth, approximately 600,000 to 800,000 oocytes are present in primordial follicles. No additional oogenesis occurs. All oocytes remain arrested in the early stage of meiosis I until puberty. The majority of the primordial follicles are lost through atresia, a process of degradation and resorption, and only about 400 ova are ovulated in a lifetime.
- **Meiosis:** A long process in oocytes. As the follicles start to grow at puberty, oocytes complete meiosis I immediately before ovulation, resulting in one much bigger haploid oocyte and a much smaller polar body, which often degrades. The oocyte immediately enters meiosis II but is arrested at metaphase II. Unless fertilization occurs by a sperm cell, meiosis II will not complete and the oocyte undergoes degradation within 24 hours of ovulation.
- **Fertilization:** Occurs when a sperm successfully penetrates through the corona radiata and zona pellucida, injecting its haploid nuclear content into the oocyte. At this time, the oocyte completes meiosis II, again resulting in one big daughter cell and a much smaller polar body. The nuclear content of the ovum and the sperm fuse to form a genetically unique zygote, complete with 46 chromosomes, half from the ovum and the other half from the sperm.
- **Germinal epithelium** in the ovaries is a misnomer. The mesothelial lining of the ovarian surface was initially thought to be the site of oogenesis; hence, it was named germinal epithelium. Later, the true origin of the oocytes was identified to be within the ovarian cortex; however, the surface lining epithelium continues to be designated as germinal epithelium. The germinal epithelium of testes refers to the wall of the seminiferous tubules; thus, it is not a misnomer in the male.
- **Ovarian cycle:** Begins with follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) from the pituitary that induces follicular growth. As the follicles grow, they secrete an increasing amount of estrogen, which stimulates uterine endometrial glandular proliferation and thickening. Once the circulating estrogen reaches a threshold, it triggers leuteinizing hormone (LH) release from the pituitary. LH triggers ovulation to take place, after which the remnant of the Graafian follicle involutes and forms a corpus luteum. The corpus luteum secretes progesterone in addition to estrogen. Progesterone induces the uterine endometrial glands to secrete nutrient-rich products in preparation for possible arrival and implantation of the fertilized conceptus. In the absence of pregnancy, the corpus

luteum undergoes involution 10 to 12 days after ovulation and causes a decline in circulating estrogen and progesterone levels. In response, the endometrial lining is shed and the menstrual phase ensues. If a conceptus successfully implants in the endometrial lining, it starts to secrete human chorionic gonadotrophin (hCG), which stimulates the corpus luteum to hypertrophy and continue to secrete its hormones, preventing the shedding of the endometrial lining along with the conceptus. The corpus luteum continues to function for up to 8 weeks into pregnancy until the placenta produces enough estrogen and progesterone on its own; at this point, the corpus luteum starts to degrade, but it may persist throughout the duration of pregnancy.

UTERUS

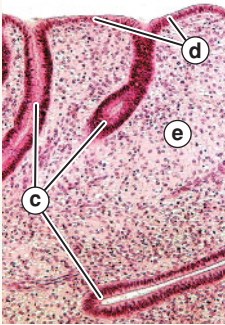


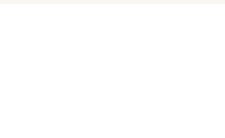
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
Pear-shaped pelvic organ	Support the implantation and development of the conceptus	Retroperitoneal pelvic cavity, between urinary bladder and rectum
1. Fundus: Dome-shaped anterior-superior portion	1. Expand to allow fetal growth	1. Anterior, superior portion of the uterus
2. Body: Triangular main portion	2. Most common site for implantation	2. Inferior to the fundus and the uterine tube openings
3. Cervix: Tapered, narrow inferior portion	3. Regulate passage of materials between the uterine space and the vagina	3. Inferior to the body
a. Cervical canal: Narrow opening through the cervix	a. Passage of menstrual products, conceptus, semen	a. Run vertically in the center of the cervix

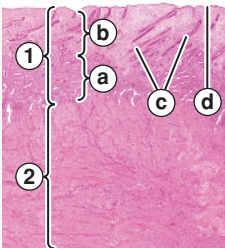
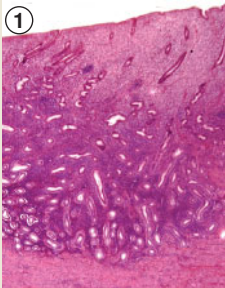


Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
b. Internal os: Opening between uterine cavity and cervical canal	b. Regulate passage between uterine cavity and cervical canal	b. Opening into the uterine cavity
c. External os: Opening between cervical canal and vagina	c. Regulate passage between cervical canal and vagina	c. Opening into the vagina
d. Ectocervix: Cervical protrusion into vagina	d. Protect the inferior portion of the uterus	d. Inferior-most portion that evaginates into the vagina
e. Fornix: Recess around the ectocervix	e. Temporary storage of deposited semen	e. Recess around the ectocervix
<i>Layers</i>		
1. Endometrium: Mucosal layer with glands of varying morphology		1. Undergo cyclic changes in response to estrogen and progesterone
a. Stratum basale: Basal portion of endometrial glands; stromal cells are present		a. Source for regenerating and thickening stratum functionale

(continued)

UTERUS (continued)

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Layers</i>			
<p>b. Stratum functionale: Contain endometrial glands of varying morphology depending on hormones and stromal cells</p>		<p>b. Proliferate and shed in response to hormones</p>	<p>b. Layer closer to the uterine cavity</p>
<p>c. Endometrial glands: Simple branched glands lined by simple columnar epithelium</p>		<p>c. Lengthen and coil with growing endometrium, secrete nutrient-rich mucoid fluid</p>	<p>c. Throughout endometrium</p>
<p>d. Endometrial lining epithelium: Simple columnar epithelium</p>		<p>d. Line the uterine cavity</p>	<p>d. Surface layer in contact with uterine cavity</p>
<p>e. Stroma: Fairly cellular connective tissue containing small, uniform stromal cells</p>		<p>e. Support endometrial glands, transform into decidual cells in response to implantation</p>	<p>e. Throughout endometrium</p>

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Layers</i>			
2. Myometrium: Thick layer of smooth muscles		2. Undergo hypertrophy and hyperplasia during pregnancy to accommodate growing fetus, undergo strong contractions during parturition	2. Middle layer of the uterus
3. Perimetrium: Mesothelial lining		3. Cover, cushion the uterus; reduce friction in movements against other organs	3. Posterior, superior, and small anterior portions of the uterus
<i>Endometrium during menstrual cycle</i>			
1. Proliferative phase: Thin endometrium gradually thickens with lengthening of straight, narrow, uniform glands in stratum functionale		1. At the end of menstrual phase, gradually thickens the endometrium under the influence estrogen	1. Days 5 to 14 in menstrual cycle which starts at the end of menstruation

(continued)

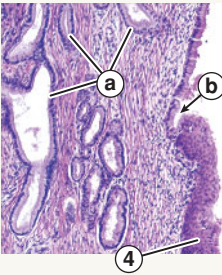
UTERUS (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Endometrium during menstrual cycle</i>		
<p>2. Early secretory phase: Endometrium thickens further; glands start to appear coiled, but have a smooth luminal outline; subnuclear vacuolation may be observed in glandular epithelium</p>	<p>2. Under the influence of progesterone, glands start to secrete nutrient-rich mucoid fluid into the lumen and uterine cavity</p>	<p>2. Days 14 to 21 in menstrual cycle, immediately after ovulation</p>
<p>3. Late secretory phase: Thickest; glands are supercoiled; luminal outline is sessile and dilated; stromal edema is observed</p>	<p>3. Under the influence of progesterone, secrete large amount of nutrient-rich fluid, prepare endometrium for possible implantation</p>	<p>3. Days 21 to 28 in menstrual cycle. Fertilized conceptus arrives in uterine cavity at approximately day 21 in menstrual cycle</p>
<p>4. Menstrual phase: Indistinct endometrial lining epithelium; stratum functionale loses structural integrity; erythrocytes are observed in the stroma and lumen</p>	<p>4. In the absence of estrogen and progesterone, stratum functionale is shed to prepare the endometrium for the next menstrual cycle</p>	<p>4. Days 0 to 5 in menstrual cycle</p>

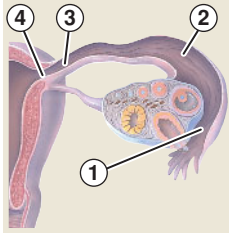
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Cervix</i>			
<p>1. Mucosa: Thin; does not contain stratum functionale; does not shed at menstrual phase</p> <p>a. Cervical glands: Large, branched mostly mucous-secreting glands</p>		<p>1. Line the cervical canal, internal and external os</p> <p>a. Produce mucus of varying viscosity; increased production of more watery mucus near the ovulation aids in sperm migration into the uterine cavity</p>	<p>1. Innermost layer of the cervix</p> <p>a. Throughout cervical mucosa</p>
<p>2. Muscularis: Smooth muscles are interspersed with large amount of collagen fibers. Elastic fibers increase near parturition</p> <p>3. Adventitia: Dense connective tissue</p>		<p>2. Continuous with myometrium, restrict expansion of the inferior uterus during pregnancy, allow fetal passage during parturition</p> <p>3. Secure and anchor the inferior portion of the uterus to the pelvic floor</p>	<p>2. Middle layer: Continuous with myometrium</p> <p>3. Outermost layer of the cervix</p>

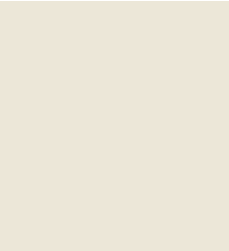


(continued)

UTERUS (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Cervix</i>		
<p>4. Ectocervix: Lined with nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium</p> <p>b. Transformation zone: Site of abrupt epithelial transition from simple columnar epithelium of the cervical canal to the nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium of the ectocervix</p>	 <p>4. Cervical projection into the vagina</p> <p>b. Mark the epithelial transition and frequent site of metaplastic changes, hence monitored routinely during Pap smear procedures</p>	<p>4. Bulges out into vaginal canal</p> <p>b. In reproductively inactive women: Within cervical canal. In reproductively active women: Outside of external os</p>

FALLOPIAN (UTERINE) TUBE

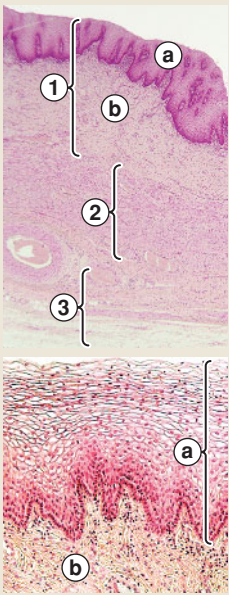
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
<p>1. Infundibulum: Funnel-shaped distal expansion containing fimbriae</p> <p>2. Ampulla: Long, gradually narrowing tubular segment</p>	 <p>1. Drape over the ovaries to draw in the ovulated ovum</p> <p>2. Site of fertilization</p>	<p>1. Distal-most portion of the fallopian tube, close proximity to the ovaries</p> <p>2. Between the infundibulum and the isthmus</p>

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
3. Isthmus: Narrow, more muscular portion		3. Propel the ovum toward the uterus	3. Adjacent to the uterus
4. Uterine (intramural): Segment of the tubule traversing the uterine wall		4. Propel the ovum into the uterine cavity	4. Within the uterine wall
<i>Histologic features</i>			
1. Mucosa: Contains numerous longitudinal folds, greatest in infundibulum and decreases closer to the uterus a. Lining: Ciliated simple columnar epithelium		1. Folds increase surface area for contact with ovum	1. Lining of the fallopian tube
a. Lamina propria: Loose connective tissue		a. Cilia create a current to conduct ovum toward the uterus b. Support lining epithelium	a. In contact with the lumen b. Deep to epithelium, core of the mucosal folds
2. Muscularis: Layer of smooth muscle cells, gets progressively thicker closer to uterus		2. Structural support and weak contraction to propel ovum toward the uterus	2. Middle layer: Continuous with the myometrium of uterus

FALLOPIAN (UTERINE) TUBE (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Histologic features</i>		
3. Serosa: Mesothelial lining	3. Cover the surface of fallopian tubes	3. Outermost layer of fallopian tube, continuous with perimetrium

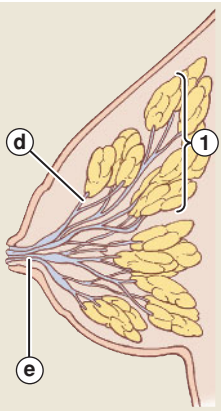
VAGINA

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Layers</i>		
<p>1. Mucosa: Contain numerous transverse folds</p> <p>a. Lining epithelium: Nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium</p> <p>b. Lamina propria: Loose connective tissue, no glands</p>		<p>1. Innermost layer</p> <p>a. In contact with vaginal space</p>
<p>2. Muscularis: Smooth muscles</p> <p>3. Adventitia: Dense irregular connective tissue</p>		<p>b. Support the epithelium</p> <p>2. Contract during copulation</p> <p>3. Deliver vascular supply</p>

Clinical Significance

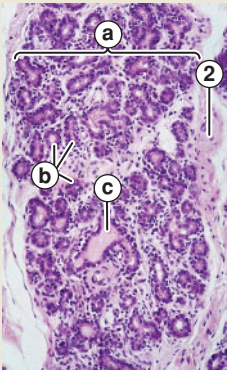
- **Pregnancy test:** Detects presence of hCG in the urine as early as 10 days of pregnancy.
- **Birth control:** A variety of hormone mimetics or antagonists are used to prevent pregnancy, many targeting the response of the endometrium to estrogen and progesterone to ensure the endometrium is not receptive to the conceptus.
- **Tubal ectopic pregnancy:** Results when the conceptus fails to enter the uterine cavity and instead implants in the fallopian tube. Due to thin mucosal lining, the placenta quickly invades into the thin muscularis layer as the conceptus grows. The muscular layer of the fallopian tube fails to accommodate the growing conceptus and eventually ruptures, causing massive bleeding from the compromised placental tissue. Such an event is an emergency that requires urgent surgery to remove the source of massive bleeding, the product of conception, and the fallopian tube.
- **Placenta accreta:** Occurs when growing fetal placenta invades the myometrial layer of the uterus, in which case removal of the placental tissue after birth is difficult, frequently resulting in a ruptured placenta that causes massive bleeding. Placenta accreta is associated with implantation of the conceptus near the cervix where the endometrium is thin and the stratum functionale is minimal to nonexistent.

MAMMARY GLANDS

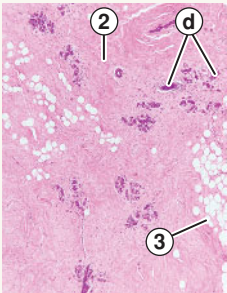
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
1. Multiple lobes of exocrine glandular tissues a. Compound tubuloacinar glands b. Secretory alveoli: Simple cuboidal epithelium	 1. Produce and secrete milk a. Respond to estrogen, progesterone, and oxytocin b. Produce milk	1. Throughout breast tissue a. Surrounded by the dense connective and adipose connective tissue b. Ends of the intralobular ducts

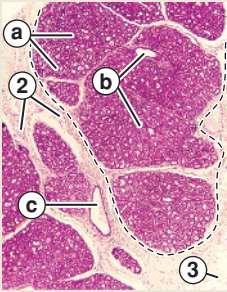
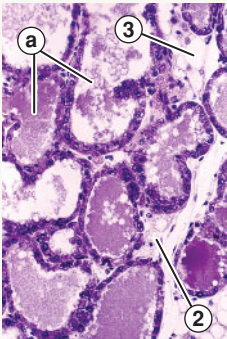
(continued)

MAMMARY GLANDS (continued)

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
<p>c. Intralobular ducts: Simple to stratified cuboidal epithelium</p> <p>d. Interlobular ducts: Simple to stratified cuboidal epithelium</p> <p>e. Lactiferous ducts: Stratified cuboidal to columnar epithelium</p> <p>2. Dense irregular connective tissue: Form septa between lobes</p> <p>3. Adipose connective tissue</p>		<p>c. Drain alveoli</p> <p>d. Drain intralobular ducts</p> <p>e. Drain interlobular ducts and open onto the nipple</p> <p>2. Separate mammary gland lobes and lobules, anchor the breast tissue to the underlying muscle tissues</p> <p>3. Store lipids, insulate and protect mammary glands</p>	<p>c. Throughout the lobules</p> <p>d. Within the septa</p> <p>e. Near the nipple</p> <p>2. Throughout breast tissue</p> <p>3. Throughout breast tissue</p>

Inactive mammary glands

<p>Small underdeveloped glands</p> <p>a. Small amount of inactive alveoli</p> <p>d. Interlobular ducts with narrow lumen</p> <p>2. Abundant dense irregular connective tissue</p>		<p>Maintain potential to produce milk</p>	<p>Throughout breasts of adolescent and adult females who are not pregnant</p>
---	---	---	--

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Inactive mammary glands</i>		
3. Abundant adipose connective tissue		
<i>Active mammary gland</i>		
<p>Larger, dense and uniform glands</p> <p>a. Abundant alveoli with dilated lumen</p> <p>b. Abundant intralobular ducts</p> <p>c. Distinct interlobular ducts</p> <p>2. Reduced dense connective tissue</p> <p>3. Reduced adipose connective tissue</p>	 <p>Glandular epithelium proliferates to produce more secretory alveoli and ductal systems</p>	Pregnant female breasts
<i>Lactating mammary gland</i>		
<p>Well developed, actively secreting glands</p> <p>a. Abundant alveoli with dilated lumen are pushed up against each other</p> <p>2. Much reduced dense connective tissue</p> <p>3. Much reduced adipose connective tissue</p>	 <p>Actively secrete and transport milk to the nipple</p>	Females after parturition

Clinical Significance

- **Breast cancer:** A variety of different types of cancer that arise from the mammary glands. Depending on which segment (duct or alveoli) and which type of cell the tumor originated from, the molecular profile and behavior of the tumor maybe distinct, hence requiring accurate diagnosis and specific treatment.
- **DCIS (ductal carcinoma in situ):** Tumor that arises from the ductal components of the mammary glands; contained within the duct and has not broken through the basement membrane of the duct.
- **LCIS (lobular carcinoma in situ):** Tumor that arises from the lobular (secretory) component of the mammary glands; contained within the alveolus and has not broken through the basement membrane.

HISTOLOGIC LOOK-A-LIKES

	Active Mammary Glands	Parotid Salivary Glands	Pancreas
Secretory units	Uniform size and shape of acinar (alveolar) secretory units lined with simple cuboidal epithelium, containing fairly good-sized lumen	Uniform size and shape of serous acinar (alveolar) secretory units lined with simple cuboidal epithelium, but lumens are small and indistinct	Uniform size and shape of serous acinar (alveolar) secretory units lined with simple cuboidal epithelium. Lumens are small and indistinct. Pale-staining islets of Langerhans are unique to pancreas
Ducts	Intra- and interlobular ducts are stratified cuboidal epithelium	Intercalated ducts are simple cuboidal epithelium. Presence of striated ducts is unique to salivary glands	Most ducts are simple cuboidal epithelium No striated ducts
Surrounding structures	Dense irregular connective tissue surrounds each lobule; intermixed adipose connective tissues are observed	Thin connective tissue septa separate lobules; adipose connective tissue is uncommon	Thin connective tissue septa separate lobules; adipose connective tissue within the gland is uncommon

	Lactating Mammary Glands	Thyroid	Lungs
Secretory units	Areas of simple cuboidal epithelium-lined alveoli with large lumens with milk that appears dusty intermixed with areas that resemble active mammary glands are seen	Spherical follicles lined with simple cuboidal to simple squamous epithelia contain homogeneous, eosinophilic colloids in the lumen. Pale-staining parafollicular cells are observed	Spherical alveoli lined with simple squamous epithelium are observed without any staining in the air space
Ducts	Much more dilated and elaborate ducts are lined by stratified cuboidal epithelium	No ducts are present	Respiratory, terminal bronchioles with simple cuboidal epithelia and bronchi with cartilage may be observed
Stroma	Thin dense connective tissue forms septa that separate lobules; adipose connective tissue is scant	Dense connective tissue capsule is present	Dense connective tissue is only found surrounding bronchioles and bronchi

	Vagina	Esophagus
Epithelia	Both nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium	
Lamina propria	No glands are present	Contain glands
Muscularis	Smooth muscles only	Skeletal muscles may be observed in the upper two-thirds of the esophagus

Special Sensory System

15

INTRODUCTION

Vision, smell, taste, hearing, and sense of balance are detected and interpreted by a set of specialized sensory organs and receptors. The eyes are specialized to let in the light, refract it, and focus it onto the special sensory receptors on the retina. The ears are composed of three sets of structures designed to channel sound waves toward the sensory receptors found in the inner ear. The inner ear is also responsible for sensing and maintaining balance and interpreting linear and angular acceleration. Taste is detected by the taste buds in the oral cavity (covered in the Digestive System section). Olfactory receptors in the superior concha of the nasal cavity receive and transfer odoriferous information to the central nervous system (CNS; covered in the Respiratory System section).

THE SPECIAL SENSORY SYSTEM

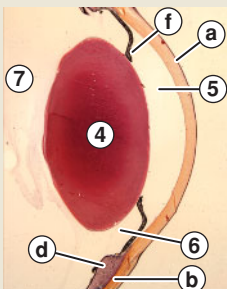
EYE			
Structure		Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
Paired globular organ; three tunics 1. Fibrous tunic: Tough, dense, and thick layer a. Cornea: Clear, highly convex region of the fibrous tunic		Collecting, channeling, refracting light to focus on the retina for visual stimuli 1. Forming a tough, rigid outer lining a. Refracting light into the globe	Orbital cavity in the skull 1. Outermost layer of the eye a. Anterior one-sixth of the fibrous tunic

(continued)

EYE (continued)

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
<p>b. Sclera: Majority of the fibrous tunic; white and gray</p> <p>2. Vascular (uveal) tunic: Dark, thinner layer containing melanocytes and vasculature</p> <p>c. Choroid: Majority of vascular tunic; thin, dark layer</p> <p>d. Ciliary body: Thickened ring of vascular tunic that projects into the vitreous chamber</p> <p>e. Suspensory ligaments: Series of thin fibers</p>		<p>b. Protecting, giving rigidity to the eye, serving as attachment site for extrinsic muscles of the eye</p> <p>2. Delivery of vascular supply to the inner eye</p> <p>c. Limiting scattering of light within the globe</p> <p>d. Participating in accommodation, producing aqueous humor</p> <p>e. Pulling or releasing the lens in the process of accommodation</p>	<p>b. Rest of the five-sixths of the fibrous tunic</p> <p>2. Deep to fibrous tunic, middle layer of the eye</p> <p>c. Posterior four-sixths of the vascular tunic</p> <p>d. Ring of vascular tunic between iris and choroid, at the same plane as the lens</p> <p>e. Run between ciliary body and peripheral rim of the lens</p>

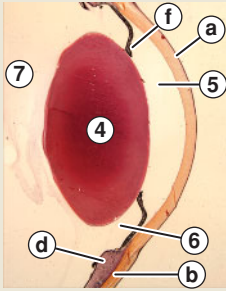
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
f. Iris: Anterior-most rim of the vascular tunic	f. Adjusting the diameter of the pupil	f. Anterior one-sixth of the vascular tunic, in front of the lens
g. Pupil: Opening in the center of the iris	g. Allowing the light to enter the globe	g. In the middle of the iris
3. Retina: Thin, translucent, yellowish layer	3. Sensing the light stimuli and transferring the information to the CNS	3. Innermost layer of the eye
h. Optic disc: Slightly depressed region of the retina where optic nerve exits the eye	h. Serving as an exit point for all axons	h. Slightly medial to fovea centralis
i. Fovea centralis: Slightly thinner region of the retina	i. Reception of visual information with high acuity	i. Medial to optic disc, in line with the pupil
j. Macula densa: Thinnest region of the retina	j. Reception of visual information with the highest acuity	j. Center of the fovea centralis
4. Lens: Oval, translucent structure	4. Fine refraction of light to focus it on macula densa	4. At the center of the ciliary body



(continued)

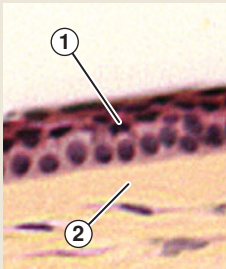
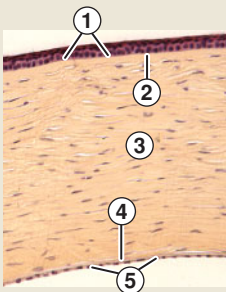
EYE (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
5. Anterior chamber: Space filled with aqueous humor	5. Containing aqueous humor	5. Between cornea and iris
6. Posterior chamber: Space filled with aqueous humor	6. Containing aqueous humor	6. Between iris and lens
7. Vitreous cavity: Space filled with gelatinous vitreous humor	7. Containing vitreous humor	7. Posterior to the lens



FIBROUS TUNIC

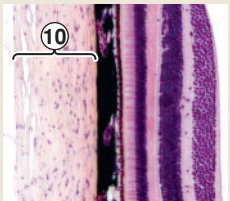
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Cornea</i>		
1. Corneal (anterior) epithelium: Nonkeratinized stratified squamous, about five layers of cells with abundant free nerve endings	1. Protection of the cornea, eliciting blinking and tearing response to touch	1. Anterior-most layer of the cornea
2. Bowman membrane: Thick acellular modified basement membrane	2. Providing strength to cornea, preventing infection spread	2. Deep to corneal epithelium, only in cornea
3. Corneal stroma (substantia propria): Thickest, 90% of the cornea, parallel layers of collagen fibrils	3. Contributing to transparency of the cornea	3. Between the Bowman and Descemet membranes



Structure		Function	Location
<i>Cornea</i>			
<p>4. Descemet membrane: Thick base-membrane of the endothelium</p> <p>5. Endothelium: Simple squamous epithelium</p>		<p>4. Supporting endothelium, separating it from the stroma</p> <p>5. Engaging in metabolic exchange between cornea and aqueous humor</p>	<p>4. Between corneal stroma and endothelium</p> <p>5. Innermost layer in contact with aqueous humor of the anterior chamber</p>
<i>Corneoscleral limbus</i>			
<p>6. Thickened anterior epithelium</p> <p>7. Abrupt disappearance of Bowman membrane</p> <p>8. Trabecular meshwork: Irregular channels lined with endothelium</p> <p>9. Scleral venous sinus (canal of Schlemm): Large channel formed by convergence of trabecular meshwork</p>		<p>6. Housing stem cells for corneal epithelium</p> <p>7. Blending of stromal tissue with scleral connective tissue</p> <p>8. Draining and conducting aqueous humor toward canal of Schlemm</p> <p>9. Larger drainage for aqueous humor</p>	<p>Junction of cornea and sclera</p> <p>6. Anterior-most layer</p> <p>7. Deep to anterior epithelium</p> <p>8. Stromal layer</p> <p>9. Throughout corneoscleral limbus</p>

(continued)

FIBROUS TUNIC (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Sclera</i>		
<p>10. Thick leathery layer, dense irregular connective tissue: Fiber bundles run in various directions but in parallel plane to each other</p>		<p>10. Protection, contributing to maintenance of the ocular pressure, allowing muscular attachments</p>
		<p>10. Posterior five-sixths of the fibrous tunic</p>

Additional Concepts

- **Vitreous humor:** Produces enough internal pressure and bulk to maintain the shape of the eye while allowing light to pass through hence is an important part of the structure of the eye.
- **Aqueous humor:** Circulates through the anterior cavity of the eye, delivering oxygen and nutrients to avascular structures such as the lens and the cornea.

Clinical Significance

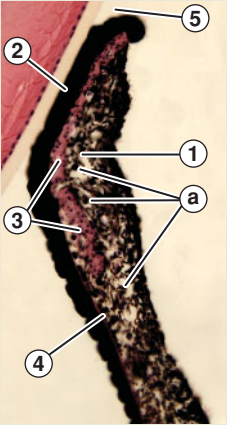
- **LASIK:** A procedure to correct myopia by performing a corrective surgery on the cornea. Surgeons make an incision at the limbus, through the corneal stroma, and precisely shave off angles or spots and then replace the flap over it.
- **Glaucoma:** Increased intraocular pressure most commonly as the result of insufficient drainage of aqueous humor by the canal of Schlemm; if allowed to progress, the increased pressure on the retina reduces blood supply to the retina, resulting in blindness.
- **Floaters:** Translucent, coiled fibers present in one's visual field for a varying amount of time. These are tangled or denatured fibrous proteins of the vitreous humor. A few floaters do not have clinical significance and increase with age.

MNEMONIC

The mnemonic **ABCDE** can help you remember the layers of the cornea from anterior to posterior.


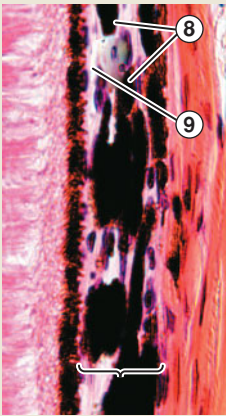
- **A**nterior epithelium
- **B**owman membrane
- **C**orneal stroma
- **D**escemet membrane
- **E**ndothelium

VASCULAR TUNIC

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Iris</i>			
<p>A diaphragm anterior to the lens</p> <p>1. Stroma: Well-vascularized connective tissue</p> <p> a. Melanocytes: Dark brown cells</p> <p>2. Two layers of pigment epithelium: Dark layer of cells containing melanin granules</p> <p>3. Sphincter pupillae: Ring of smooth muscle cells</p> <p>4. Dilator pupillae: Smooth muscles arranged radially</p> <p>5. Pupil: Central aperture</p>		<p>Adjusting the amount of light entering the eye</p> <p>1. Delivering nutrients to the iris</p> <p> a. Absorbing light, imparting eye color</p> <p>2. Absorbing light, contributing to eye color</p> <p>3. Contracting to decrease pupil size</p> <p>4. Contracting to increase pupil size</p> <p>5. Opening through which light enters the eye</p>	<p>Anterior-most rim, between anterior and posterior chambers of the eye</p> <p>1. Anterior surface of the iris</p> <p> a. Scattered throughout stroma</p> <p>2. Posterior surface of the iris</p> <p>3. Circle around the pupil within stromal layer</p> <p>4. Peripheral to sphincter pupillae, anterior to pigment epithelium</p> <p>5. Center of iris</p>
<i>Ciliary body</i>			
Thickened ring of vascular tunic		Aqueous humor production, participation in accommodation	Between iris and choroid

(continued)

VASCULAR TUNIC (continued)

Structure		Function	Location
<i>Ciliary body</i>			
<p>6. Ciliary processes: Radial ridges and projections into posterior chamber</p> <p>b. Suspensory ligaments (zonular fibers): Thin, translucent fibers arising from ciliary processes</p>		<p>6. Anchoring zonular fibers, participation in aqueous humor production</p> <p>b. Attachment to the lens, participation in accommodation</p>	<p>6. Extending out into posterior chamber</p> <p>b. Run between ciliary processes and peripheral rim of the lens</p>
<p>7. Ciliary muscles: Smooth muscles</p>		<p>7. Main participant in accommodation</p>	<p>7. Within ciliary body</p>
<i>Choroid</i>			
<p>Thin sheet of dark brown tissue</p> <p>8. Melanocytes: Dark brown cells</p> <p>9. Bruch membrane: Thin, acellular layer</p>		<p>Delivery of nutrient and prevention of light reflection</p> <p>8. Pigment production</p> <p>9. Forming a boundary between choroid and retina, firmly anchoring retina to choroid</p>	<p>Between sclera and retina</p> <p>8. Scattered throughout choroid</p> <p>9. Between choroid and retina</p>

Additional Concepts

- **Parasympathetic innervation of the iris**
 - **Sphincter pupillae:** Innervated by the parasympathetic nerve; hence, in a relaxed state, parasympathetic signals contract sphincter pupillae, reducing the size of the pupil.
 - **Dilator pupillae:** Innervated by the sympathetic nerve; hence, under stressful conditions, sympathetic signals contract dilator pupillae and increase the size of the pupil.
- **Accommodation:** Ability to regulate convexity of lens to fine tune the refraction of light, ensuring image is focused on fovea centralis. Accommodation is achieved by the contraction of ciliary muscles.
 - Focusing on an up-close object: Ciliary muscles contract, making the diameter of the opening in the middle of the ciliary body smaller. Zonula fibers are relaxed and lens is allowed to be rounded due to its elastic nature. Sore eyes when staring at a nearby object are thought to be caused by lactic acid buildup in the ciliary muscles as the result of prolonged contraction.
 - Focusing on a far-away object: Ciliary muscles relax, increasing the diameter of the opening in the middle of the ciliary body. Zonular fibers become taught and pull on the periphery of the lens, and the lens flattens.

Clinical Significance

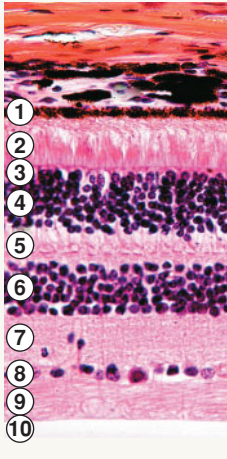

- **Uveal melanoma:** Melanoma that arises from the melanocytes of the uvea (vascular tunic). Though rare, uveal melanomas are highly malignant tumors that tend to metastasize most commonly to the liver via blood vessels. The size of the tumor and its breach of the Bruch membrane affect patients' prognosis.


RETINA

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Pigmented layer</i>		
1. Retinal pigment epithelium: Simple cuboidal epithelium	1. Absorbing excess light to prevent reflection, photosensitivity restoration, phagocytosis of debris	Outer layer of retina, attached to Bruch membrane

(continued)

RETINA (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Pigmented layer</i>		
a. Abundant zonula occludens and gap junctions	a. Forming blood-retina barrier	
<i>Neural layer (neural retina, retina proper)</i>		
<p>Nine layers formed by photoreceptor cells, interneurons, and glial cells</p> <p>2. Photoreceptors (rods and cones)</p> <p>3. Exterior (outer) limiting membrane</p> <p>4. Outer nuclear layer: Cell bodies of rods and cones</p> <p>5. Outer plexiform layer: Cell process of rods, cones, and other neurons</p>	 <p>2. Responding, initiating action potential in response to photons</p> <p>3. Forming a boundary of supporting cells</p> <p>4. Containing cell bodies of rods and cones</p> <p>5. Housing processes of rods, cones, and other interneurons; allowing synapses</p>	<p>Receive and transmit visual sensory stimuli</p> <p>Outermost layer</p> 

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Neural layer (neural retina, retina proper)</i>		
6. Inner nuclear layer: Cell bodies of other neurons	6. Containing cell bodies of interneurons	
7. Inner plexiform layer: Cell processes	7. Housing processes of interneurons, allowing synapses	
8. Ganglion cell layer: Cell bodies of ganglion cells	8. Containing cell bodies of ganglion cells that conduct signals	
9. Nerve fiber layer: Thin ganglion cell processes	9. Containing ganglion cell processes, conducting visual signals to the brain	
10. Inner limiting membrane: Basal lamina	10. Forming an acellular layer between retina and vitreous chamber	
		Innermost layer

Clinical Significance

- **Detached retina:** Loose connection between the two layers of the retina is a potential space between neural and pigmented layer of the retina. Treatment includes introduction of air bubbles and prone positioning of the head for a prolonged time to help push the neural layer against the pigmented layer until the contact is re-established.

MNEMONIC

In New Generation It Is Only Ophthalmologist Examines Patient's Retina: Retinal layers from inside to outside

In (Inner limiting membrane)

New (Nerve fiber layer)

Generation (Ganglion cell)

It (Inner plexiform layer)

Is (Inner nuclear layer)

Only (Outer plexiform layer)

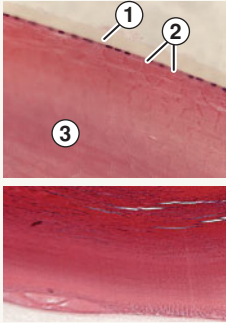
Ophthalmologist (Outer nuclear layer)

Examines (Exterior limiting membrane)

Patient's (Photoreceptors, rods, cones)

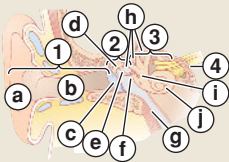
Retina (Retinal pigment epithelium)

LENS

Structure	Function	Location	
<i>Macroscopic features</i>			
Biconvex, transparent, avascular crystalline structure	Refract the light and fine tune the focus onto fovea centralis	Suspended by zonular fibers at the level of ciliary body, between posterior and vitreous chambers	
<i>Microscopic structures</i>			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Lens capsule: Thick, modified basement membrane 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Surround the entire surface of the lens 	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Subcapsular epithelium: Simple cuboidal epithelium 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Forming the boundary, protecting the lens, providing attachment sites for zonular fibers 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Only on the anterior surface, deep to lens capsule
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Lens fibers: Thin, elongated, flattened structures filled with crystalline proteins and precisely aligned with each other <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No simple epithelial lining on posterior surface 		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Giving rise to new lens fibers 3. Imparting transparency and refractory property to lens 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Form the bulk of the lens

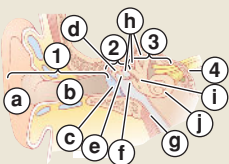
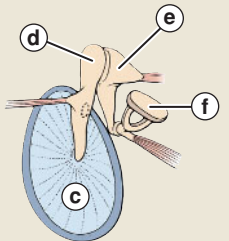
Clinical Significance

- **Cataract:** Gradual, progressive loss of transparency of the lens associated with increasing age. Abnormalities in lens crystalline proteins and fiber organization have been observed in opaque lenses of cataract patients. Replacement of the effected lens with an artificial lens is indicated in advanced cases of cataract with significant vision impairment.
- **Presbyopia:** Far-sightedness that develops with loss of elasticity in the lens and the ability to accommodate, resulting in inability to focus on nearby objects.

EAR		
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
<p>1. External ear: Visible and easily accessible portions</p> <p>a. Auricle (pinna): Outward appendage of varying shape and size</p> <p>b. External auditory meatus: Air-filled channel, containing hair and modified sebaceous glands (ceruminous glands)</p>	 <p>1. Sound collection, localization, conduction to middle ear</p> <p>a. Sound collection, localization</p> <p>b. Sound wave conduction, trapping foreign particles</p>	<p>1. Lateral sides of the head approximately at the level of the eyes</p> <p>a. External protrusion</p> <p>b. Internal tubule running toward middle ear</p>

(continued)

EAR (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
<p>c. Tympanic membrane: Thin, transparent membrane</p> <p>2. Middle ear: Air-filled space containing three ossicles</p> <p>d. Malleus: Small bone in contact with tympanic membrane</p>		<p>c. Vibration and conversion of sound energy into mechanical energy</p> <p>2. Within the petrous portion of temporal bone</p>
<p>e. Incus: Largest of three ossicles in the middle</p> <p>f. Stapes: Bone in contact with oval window</p> <p>g. Auditory tube: Narrow, flattened tube that may be opened to equalize middle ear pressure</p>		

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Macroscopic features</i>		
<p>3. Inner ear: Structure of complex shape</p> <p>h. Semicircular canals: Three bony arches</p> <p>i. Vestibule: Oval, mid-structure</p> <p>j. Cochlea: Spiral-shaped bony casing</p>		<p>3. Within petrous portion of temporal bone, medial to middle ear</p>
<p>4. Vestibulo-cochlear nerve</p>		<p>3. Containing special sensory receptors for hearing and balance</p> <p>h. Housing semicircular canals</p> <p>i. Housing utricle and saccule</p> <p>j. Housing cochlear duct</p>

Clinical Significance

- Middle ear infection:** Auditory tube is normally collapsed and approximately 3.5 cm in length in adults. It is, however, significantly shorter in infants, making them susceptible to spread of infection from the pharynx to the middle ear through the auditory tube, which results in otitis media.
- Conducting hearing loss:** Results from the mechanical failure in transmitting sound to the otherwise normal inner ear. The problem thus may involve any structures in the external and middle ears including otitis media, excess earwax, and otosclerosis. Conducting hearing loss may be treatable by medical or surgical interventions.
- Sensorineural hearing loss/impairment:** Results from damage to or dysfunctional sensory receptors, the cochlear nerve, or the auditory nerve pathway. Sensorineural impairment accounts for about 90% of hearing. Cochlear implants may restore some auditory function in select patients.

INNER EAR

Structure		Function	Location
Bony labyrinth			
<p>Outer, bony casing of the inner ear, containing membranous labyrinth suspended in perilymph</p> <p>1. Semicircular canals: Three arches in three different planes</p> <p>2. Vestibule: Oval swelling</p> <p>3. Cochlea: Snail shell-like spiral structure</p>		<p>Housing, protecting, insulating membranous labyrinth</p> <p>1. Housing semicircular ducts</p> <p>2. Housing utricle and saccule</p> <p>3. Housing cochlear duct</p>	<p>Outer layer of the inner ear</p> <p>1. Posterior to middle ear</p> <p>2. Antero-medial to semicircular canals</p> <p>3. Medial to middle ear</p>
Membranous labyrinth			
<p>Thin, delicate, translucent series of tubule systems suspended in the perilymph of bony labyrinth. Filled with endolymph, containing special sensory structures</p> <p>4. Semicircular ducts: Three arches</p> <p>a. Cristae ampullaris: Thickened epithelial ridge containing hair cells</p>		<p>Housing endolymph and special sensory structures for hearing and sense of balance</p> <p>4. Detection of angular movements</p> <p>a. Housing sensory hair cells</p>	<p>Suspended within the perilymph of the bony labyrinth</p> <p>4. Within semicircular canal</p> <p>a. At each base of semicircular ducts</p>

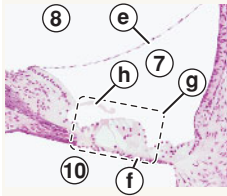
Structure	Function	Location
<i>Membranous labyrinth</i>		
b. Copula: Gelatinous mass	b. Bending hair cells embedded in it to trigger action potential	b. A thickened spot on the wall of each ampulla
5. Utricle: Dilated, oval structure	5. Detection of linear movements	5. Within vestibule, closer to semicircular duct
c. Macula: Thickened epithelial ridge	c. Housing sensory hair cells	c. A thickened spot on utricular wall
d. Otolith membrane: Gelatinous mass with crystalline particles (otoliths)	d. Bending hair cells embedded in it to trigger action potential	d. On top of and in contact with macula
6. Sacculle: Dilated oval structure with macula and otolith membrane	6. Detection of vertical movements	6. Within vestibule, closer to cochlear duct
7. Cochlear duct (scala media): Thin tube coiled 2.5 turns	7. Detection of sound	7. Within cochlea
e. Vestibular membrane: Two simple squamous epithelia with basement membrane in between	e. Forming the roof of cochlear duct	e. Top layer of cochlear duct



(continued)

INNER EAR (continued)

Structure	Function	Location
<i>Membranous labyrinth</i>		
f. Basilar membrane: Contains organ of Corti on top of basement membrane and simple squamous epithelium	f. Forming the base of cochlear duct, housing organ of Corti	f. Bottom layer of cochlear duct
g. Organ of Corti: Two rows of hair cells and supporting cells	g. Housing sensory hair cells	g. On basilar membrane, throughout the length of cochlear duct
h. Tectorial membrane: Sheet of collagen fibers	h. Bending of hair cells embedded in it to trigger action potential	h. Within cochlear duct, in contact with hair cells of organ of Corti
8. Scala vestibule: Perilymph-filled space above vestibular membrane	8. Transmitting energy from oval window to helicotrema	8. Space between cochlear wall and vestibular membrane
9. Helicotrema: Connecting point between scala vestibuli and tympani, filled with perilymph	9. Connecting perilymph-filled spaces between scala vestibuli and tympani, allowing energy transmission	9. At the tip of cochlear spiral



Structure	Function	Location
<i>Membranous labyrinth</i>		
10. Scala tympani: Perilymph-filled space below basilar membrane	10. Transmitting energy from helicotrema to round window, vibrating basilar membrane	10. Space between cochlear wall and basilar membrane

FIGURE CREDITS

All sources are published by Lippincott Williams & Wilkins unless otherwise noted.

CHAPTER 1

Page 2, top to bottom Cui D. *Atlas of Histology with Functional and Clinical Correlations*, 2011, Fig. 2-8B, p. 21; Eroschenko VP. *diFiore's Atlas of Histology with Functional Correlations*, 12th ed., 2013, Fig. 1.2, p. 4; Eroschenko, Fig. 1.2, p. 4; Courtesy of Lisa M. J. Lee, PhD, Department of Cell and Developmental Biology, University of Colorado School of Medicine.

Page 3 Ross MH, Pawlina W. *Histology: A Text and Atlas*, 6th ed., 2011, Fig. 2.45, p. 60.

Page 4, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 2-8A, p. 21; Cui, Fig. 3-1A, p. 19; Eroschenko, Fig. 2.6, p. 25.

Page 5, top to bottom Eroschenko, Fig. 2.10, p. 29; Eroschenko, Fig. 2.7, p. 27.

Page 6, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 3-1A, p. 19; Cui, Fig. 2-2, p. 15; Ross, Fig. 2.46, p. 61; Ross MH, Pawlina W. *Histology: A Text and Atlas*, 6th ed., 2011, Fig. 2.49, p. 63.

Page 7, top to bottom Ross MH, Pawlina W. *Histology: A Text and Atlas*, 6th ed., 2011, Fig. 2.40, p. 58; Ross, Fig. 2.55, p. 70; Ross, Fig. 2.52, p. 69.

Page 8, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 2-8B, p. 21; Ross, Fig. 2.45, p. 60; Ross, Fig. 1.4, p. 8.

Page 9, top to bottom Gartner LP, Hiatt JL. *Color Atlas of Histology*, 5th ed. 2009, Fig. 2, p. 45; Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 21.

CHAPTER 2

Page 12, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 2-6A, p. 19; Ross, Fig. 5.22, p. 133.

Page 13, top to bottom Ross, Fig. 5.28, p. 138; Cui, Fig. 3-1A, p. 29.

Page 14 Cui, Fig. 3-1A, p. 29.

Page 15, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 3-1A, p. 29; Cui, Fig. 3-11B, p. 39; Cui, Fig. 3-11A, p. 39; Cui, Fig. 3-11C.

Page 16 Cui, Fig. 3-1A, p. 29.

Page 17, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 3-1A, p. 29; Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 367; Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 255; Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 239.

Page 18, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 41; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 47; Cui, Fig. 3-1A, p. 29; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 351.

Page 19 Cui, Fig. 3-20A, p. 50.

Page 20, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 3-21B, p. 51; Cui, Fig. 3-22B, p. 51, Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 241.

Page 21, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 3-24B, p. 52; Cui, Fig. 3-25B, p. 53; Cui, Fig. 3-26, p. 53; Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 323.

Page 22, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 3-18A, p. 48; Cui, Fig. 3-28B, p. 54.

Page 23, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 15-13B, p. 295; Cui, Fig. 17-10B, p. 336; Cui, Fig. 3-5A, p. 33.

CHAPTER 3

Page 25 Cui, Fig. 4-3A, p. 62.

Page 26, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 4-3A, p. 62; Cui, Fig. 4-2F, p. 61; Cui, Fig. 4-2C, p. 61.

Page 27, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 4-3A, p. 62; Cui, Fig. 4-3A, p. 62; Cui, Fig. 4-2D, p. 61; Cui, Fig. 4-3A, p. 62.

Page 28, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 4-3A, p. 62; Cui, Fig. 4-5B, p. 64; Cui, Fig. 4-11B, p. 67.

Page 29 Cui, Fig. 4-5B, p. 64.

Page 30, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 4-5B, p. 64; Cui, Fig. 4-3A, p. 62.

Page 31 Cui, Fig. 4-3A, p. 62.

Page 32, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 4-6B, p. 64; Cui, Fig. 4-13A, p. 69; Eroschenko, Fig. 5.10, p. 81.

Page 33, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 4-20A, p. 76; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 59.

Page 34, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 4-18A, p. 74; Ross, Fig. 9.5, p. 267.

Page 35 Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 59.

Page 36 Cui, Fig. 5-2C, p. 83.

Page 37 Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 81.

Page 38, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 83; Eroschenko, Fig. 7.8, p. 119.

Pages 39 and 40 Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 83.

Page 41, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 5-10B, p. 92; Ross, Fig. 8.1, p. 220.

Page 42, top to bottom Ross, Fig. 8.1, p. 220; Cui, Fig. 5-8, p. 90; Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 85.

Page 43 Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 85.

Page 44, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 5-8, p. 90; Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 85; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 85.

Page 45, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 5-14A, p. 96; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 83.

Page 46, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 83; Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 109.

Page 47 Cui, Fig. 5-10B, p. 92.

Page 48 Asset provided by Lisa M.J. Lee, PhD, University of Colorado School of Medicine.

CHAPTER 4

- Page 51, top to bottom** Cui, Fig. 6-3A, p. 103; Cui, Fig. 6-8B, p. 108.
- Page 52, top to bottom** Cui, Fig. 6-10B, p. 110; Ross, Fig. 11.2b, p. 312.
- Page 53** Cui, Fig. 6-4A, p. 104.
- Page 54, top to bottom** Cui, Fig. 6-4B, p. 104; Cui, Fig. 6-5A, p. 105.
- Page 55, top to bottom** Cui, Fig. 6-5B, p. 105; Cui, Fig. 6-4A, p. 104; Cui, Fig. 6-4B, p. 104.
- Page 56, top to bottom** Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 127; Cui, Fig. 6-6B, p. 106.
- Page 57** Ross, Fig. 11.3, p. 313.
- Page 58** Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 135.
- Page 59, top to bottom** Cui, Fig. 6-9, p. 109; Ross, Fig. 11-15, p. 328.
- Page 60, top to bottom** Cui, Fig. 6-10B, p. 110; Cui, Fig. 6-13A, p. 113.

CHAPTER 5

- Page 63** Cui, Fig. 7-2A, p. 119.
- Page 64** Ross, Fig. 12.1, p. 354.
- Page 65** Gartner, Fig. 1b, p. 155.
- Page 66** Cui, Fig. 7-1B, p. 118.
- Page 67** Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 147.
- Page 68, top to bottom** Ross, Fig. 12.22, p. 374; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 155; Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 155; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 153.
- Pages 69 and 70** Cui, Fig. 4-6B, p. 64.
- Page 71** Cui, Fig. 7-10A, p. 127.
- Page 72, top to bottom** Cui, Fig. 7-10A, p. 127; Cui, Fig. 7-11A, p. 128.
- Page 73, top to bottom** Cui, Fig. 7-11B, p. 128; Cui, Fig. 7-9A, p. 126.
- Page 74, top to bottom** Cui, Fig. 7-9A, p. 126; Cui, Fig. 7-9B, p. 126.
- Page 75** Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 155.
- Page 76 top to bottom** Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 155; Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 155.
- Page 77** Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 153.
- Page 78, top to bottom** Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 153; Cui, Fig. 7-15B, p. 132.
- Page 79** Cui, Fig. 7-2C, p. 119.
- Page 80** Ross, Fig. 12.3, p. 356.
- Page 81** Ross, Fig. 12.33, p. 387.

CHAPTER 6

- Page 84** Cui, Fig. 8.2A, p. 138.
- Page 85, top to bottom** Cui, Fig. 8.5A, p. 141; Cui, Fig. 8.4A, p. 140; Cui, Fig. 8.4B, p. 140; Cui, Fig. 8-7A, p. 143.

- Page 86, top to bottom** Cui, Fig. 8-7B, p. 143; Cui, Fig. 8.2A, p. 138.
Page 87 Ross, Fig. 10.3, p. 272.
Page 88 Cui, Fig. 9-2, p. 159.
Page 89 Ross, Fig. 13.4, p. 402.
Page 90, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 175; Cui, Fig. 9-3C, p. 160.
Page 91 Gartner, Graphic 8-1, p. 162.
Page 92, top to bottom Gartner, Graphic 8-1, p. 162; Cui, Fig. 9-7B, p. 164.
Page 93, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 169; Cui, Fig. 9-8C, p. 164.
Page 94, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 9-10B, p. 167; Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 173.
Page 95, top to bottom Eroschenko, Fig. 10.3, p. 223; Cui, Fig. 9-13B, p. 170; Eroschenko, Fig. 10.4, p. 223.
Page 96, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 9-14B, p. 171; Cui, Fig. 9-14B, p. 171.
Page 97, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 173; Cui, Fig. 9-17C, p. 174.
Page 98 Cui, Fig. 9-17C, p. 174.

CHAPTER 7

- Page 101** Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 311.
Page 102 Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 195.
Page 103, top to bottom Ross, Fig. 14.15a, p. 460; Ross, Fig. 14.15b, p. 460.
Page 104 Cui, Fig. 10-8A, p. 189.
Page 105 Eroschenko, Fig. 13.7, p. 293.
Page 106, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 10.10, p. 191; Cui, Fig. 10.11A, p. 192.
Page 107 Cui, Fig. 10.11B, p. 192.
Page 108 Cui, Fig. 10.10, p. 191.
Page 109, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 199; Cui, Fig. 10-13B, p. 194.
Page 110 Cui, Fig. 10-13C, p. 194.
Page 111 Cui, Fig. 10-14A, p. 195.
Page 112, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 201; Cui, Fig. 10-14C, p. 195.

CHAPTER 8

- Pages 115 and 116** Cui, Fig. 13-3B, p. 246.
Page 117 Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 239.
Page 118 Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 239.
Page 119, top to bottom Ross, Fig. 15.12, p. 503; Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 243.

Page 120 Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 241.

Page 121, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 13-10C, p. 253; Cui, Fig. 13-11A, p. 254.

Page 122, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 13-9A, p. 252; Cui, Fig. 13-9B, p. 252.

Page 123 Ross, Fig. 15, p. 510.

CHAPTER 9

Page 125, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 283; Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 283.

Page 126, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 281; Cui, Fig. 14-5B, p. 263; Cui, Fig. 14-5C, p. 263; Cui, Fig. 14-6B, p. 264.

Page 127, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 14-6A, p. 264; Cui, Fig. 14-6B, p. 264; Cui, Fig. 14-12B, p. 271; Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 275.

Page 128 Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 275.

Page 129, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 277; Cui, Fig. 16-3A, p. 309; Cui, Fig. 16-4A, p. 310.

Page 130, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 16-7A, p. 313; Cui, Fig. 16-5A, p. 313.

Page 131, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 16-5A, p. 313; Cui, Fig. 16-8A, p. 314.

Page 132, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 16-8B, p. 314; Eroschenko, Fig. 14.3, p. 317.

Page 133 Cui, Fig. 15-14A, p. 296.

Page 134, top to bottom Eroschenko, Fig. 14.3, p. 317; Cui, Fig. 15-14C, p. 296.

Page 136, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 301; Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 301.

Page 137, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 301; Eroschenko, Fig. 14.7, p. 323.

Page 138 Ross, Fig. 17.5, p. 574.

Page 139 Ross, Fig. 17.7, p. 575.

Page 140, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 305; Eroschenko, Fig. 14.10, p. 329; Eroschenko, Fig. 14.10, p. 329.

Page 141, top to bottom Ross, Fig. 17.17, p. 589; Eroschenko, Fig. 15.3, p. 349.

Page 142, top to bottom Eroschenko, Fig. 15.3, p. 349; Cui, Fig. 15-12A, p. 294; Cui, Fig. 15-13B, p. 295.

Page 143, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 191; Eroschenko, Fig. 15.2, p. 347.

Page 144, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 309; Cui, Fig. 15-15B, p. 297.

Page 145 Cui, Fig. 15-15C, p. 297.

Page 146 Ross, Fig. 17.27, p. 598.

Page 147, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 15-17A, p. 299; Eroschenko, Fig. 15.10, p. 357.

Page 148, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 15-19A, p. 301; Cui, Fig. 15-19B, p. 301.

Page 150 Cui, Fig. 16-1, p. 318.

Page 151, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 16-12A, p. 307; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 327; Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 327.

Page 152 Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 328.

Page 153 Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 328.

Page 154 Gartner, Plate 15-3, p. 326.

Page 155, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 16-15A, p. 321; Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 329.

Page 156 Cui, Fig. 16-15A, p. 321.

Page 157 Cui, Fig. 16-10A, p. 316.

Page 158 Eroschenko, Fig. 16.13, p. 383.

CHAPTER 10

Page 161 Cui, Fig. 11-3A, p. 205.

Page 162, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 257; Cui, Fig. 11-4B, p. 206.

Page 163, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 5, p. 255; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 81; Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 83.

Page 165, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 11-6A, p. 208; Cui, Fig. 11-6B, p. 208.

Page 166, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 11-8A, p. 210; Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 261.

Page 167, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 11-10B, p. 212; Cui, Fig. 11-10B insert, p. 212; Cui, Fig. 11-11A, p. 213.

Page 168 Cui, Fig. 11-11A insert, p. 213.

Page 169 Eroschenko, Fig. 17-12, p. 407.

Page 170, top to bottom Eroschenko, Fig. 17-12, p. 407; Cui, Fig. 11-11C, p. 213; Eroschenko, Fig. 17.15, p. 411.

Pages 172 and 173 Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 263.

CHAPTER 11

Page 175 Cui, Fig. 12-2, p. 225.

Page 176, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 12-2, p. 225; Eroschenko, Fig. 18.1, p. 421.

Page 177 Eroschenko, Fig. 18.1, p. 421.

Page 178, top to bottom Eroschenko, Fig. 18.1, p. 421; Cui, Fig. 12-6A, p. 229.

Page 179, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 344; Eroschenko, Fig. 18.11, p. 439.

Pages 180 and 181 Cui, Fig. 12-8B, p. 231.

Page 182 Eroschenko, Fig. 18.7, p. 435.

Pages 183 and 184 Ross, Fig. 20.24, p. 723.

Page 185 Eroschenko, Fig. 18.14, p. 441.

Page 186 Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 351.

Page 187, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 12.1, p. 224; Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 351; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 351.

CHAPTER 12

Page 189 Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 215.

Page 190 Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 215; Cui, Fig. 17.4B, p. 330.

Page 191 Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 215.

Page 192 Cui, Fig. 17.6B, p. 332.

Page 193 Cui, Fig. 17-5B, p. 331.

Page 194 Cui, Fig. 17.10A, p. 336.

Page 195 Cui, Fig. 17.10B, p. 336.

Page 196, top to bottom Gartner, Plate 10-3, p. 218; Cui, Fig. 17-8A, p. 334.

Page 197 Cui, Fig. 17-8B, p. 334.

Page 198, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 17.9A, p. 335; Cui, Fig. 17.9B, p. 335.

Page 199, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 17.13A, p. 339; Cui, Fig. 17.13B, p. 339.

CHAPTER 13

Page 201 Ross, Fig. 22.4a, p. 790.

Page 202, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 18-14A, p. 360; Cui, Fig. 18-13A, p. 359.

Page 203, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 387; Cui, Fig. 18-7B, p. 353.

Page 204, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 387; Cui, Fig. 18-7B, p. 353; Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 389.

Page 205, top to bottom Ross, Fig. 22.6, p. 791; Ross, Fig. 22.4a, p. 790.

Page 206, top to bottom Eroschenko, Fig. 20.9, p. 489; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 389.

Page 207 Cui, Fig. 18-19A, p. 365.

Page 208, top to bottom Gartner, Plate 18-4, p. 392; Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 391; Cui, Fig. 7-22A, p. 128.

Page 209 Cui, Fig. 18-20A, p. 366.

Page 210, top to bottom Gartner, Plate 18-4, p. 392; Cui, Fig. 18-22, p. 368.

Page 211 Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 393.

CHAPTER 14

Page 213 Cui, Fig. 19-3A, p. 374.

Page 214 Cui, Fig. 19.3A, p. 374.

Page 215, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 361; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 361; Cui, Fig. 19-6B, p. 377.

Page 216, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 19-6B, p. 377; Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 361.

Page 217, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 3, p. 361; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 361; Cui, Fig. 19-6B, p. 377.

Page 218, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 19-7A, p. 378; Cui, Fig. 19-7B, p. 378.

Page 220 Gartner, Graphic 17-1, p. 354.

Page 221 Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 369.

Page 222, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 369; Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 371.

Page 223, top to bottom Gartner, Fig. 1, p. 369; Cui, Fig. 19-10B, p. 381.

Page 224, top to bottom Eroschenko, Fig. 21.16, p. 529; Cui, Fig. 19-10C, p. 381; Cui, Fig. 19-10A, p. 381.

Page 225, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 19-12A, p. 383; Ross, Fig. 23.21, p. 855.

Page 226, top to bottom Ross, Fig. 23.21, p. 855; Gartner, Graphic 17-1, p. 354.

Page 227, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 19-9A, p. 380; Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 367.

Page 228, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 19-14B, p. 385; Gartner, Fig. 4, p. 373.

Page 229 Cui, Fig. 19-15A, p. 386.

Page 230, top to bottom Eroschenko, Fig. 21.29, p. 551; Cui, Fig. 19-15B, p. 386.

Page 231, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 19-15C, p. 386; Eroschenko, Fig. 21.32, p. 555.

CHAPTER 15

Pages 235 and 236 Cui, Fig. 20-1, p. 392.

Page 237 Cui, Fig. 20-7A, p. 398.

Page 238, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 20-7A, p. 398, Cui, Fig. 20-5A, p. 396.

Page 239, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 20-5A, p. 396; Ross, Plate 107, p. 927.

Page 240 Eroschenko, Fig. 22.8, p. 569.

Page 241 Cui, Fig. 20-9B, p. 400.

Page 242, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 14-6A, p. 264; Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 407.

Page 244 Gartner, Fig. 2, p. 407.

Page 246, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 20-7A, p. 398; Cui, Fig. 20-7B, p. 398; Cui, Fig. 20-7C, p. 398.

Page 247 Cui, Fig. 21-1A, p. 412.

Page 248, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 21-1A, p. 412; Cui, Fig. 21-1B, p. 412.

Page 249 Cui, Fig. 21-1A, p. 412.

Page 250, top to bottom Cui, Fig. 21-2, p. 413; Cui, Fig. 21-8B, p. 419.

Page 251 Cui, Fig. 21-5, p. 416.

Page 252 Cui, Fig. 21-5, p. 416.

Note: Page numbers followed by “f” denote figures.

A

- Accessory glands. *See also* Male reproductive system
 - prostate gland, 208–209
 - seminal vesicles, 208
- Acidophilia. *See* Eosinophilia
- Acne, 124
- Acromegaly, 194
- Actin filaments, 6
- Addison disease, 196
- Adhesion junctions, 12
- Adipocytes, 31
- Adrenal gland, 194–195
- Agranulocytes, 87
- Alveolar pores, 171
- Alveolar septum, 171, 172f
- Anaphylaxis, 36
- Anemia, 87
- Anosmia, 164
- Anthraxosis, 172–173
- Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), 182, 183
- Apocrine glands, 123
- Appendicitis, 149
- Arrector pili muscle, 121
- Arteries. *See also* Blood vessels
 - arterioles, 94
 - elastic, 92–93
 - muscular, 93
 - small, 94
- Arterioles, 94
- Arteriovenous (AV) shunts, 98
 - in skin, 98
- Artifacts, 3
- Asthma, 168
- Astrocytes, 67
- Atherosclerosis, 99
- Atrophy, 58
- Autonomic nervous system (ANS), 63
- Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease, 188
- Autosomal recessive polycystic kidney disease, 188
- Autosplenectomy, 113
- Axoneme, 7

B

- BALT (bronchus-associated lymphoid tissue), 102
- Band of Büngner, 81
- Basophilia, 3
- Basophils, 86
- Benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH), 209
- Bipolar neuron, 66
- Birth control, 229
- Blood, 83
 - formed elements, 84
 - buffy coat, 84
 - hematocrit, 84
 - plasma, 84
 - platelets, 86
 - red blood cells, 84
 - white blood cells, 85
 - basophils, 86
 - eosinophils, 85
 - lymphocytes, 85
 - monocytes, 85
 - neutrophils, 85
- Blood-air barrier, 171, 173f
- Blood-brain barrier, 80
 - astrocyte end-foot processes, 80
 - basement membrane, 80
 - continuous capillaries, 80
- Blood-thymic barrier, 110
- Blood vessels, 91
 - tunica adventitia, 92
 - tunica intima, 91
 - tunica media, 91–92
- Body odor, 124
- Bone
 - cells
 - osteoblasts, 40
 - osteoclasts, 40
 - osteocytes, 40
 - osteoprogenitors, 39
 - compact bone, 41–44
 - coverings
 - endosteum, 41
 - periosteum, 41
 - marrow space, 42, 46
 - remodeling and blood calcium level,
 - hormonal regulation of, 46–49, 48f
 - spong bone, 41, 44–46

- Bowman capsule, 182
- Brain
- macroscopic features
 - cortex, 71
 - medulla, 71
 - nuclei, 71
 - tracts, 71
 - microscopic features
 - cerebellar cortex, 72–73
 - cerebellar medulla, 72
 - cerebral cortex, 72
 - cerebral medulla, 71
- Breast cancer, 232
- Bronchi, segmental branching of, 171
- Bullous pemphigoid, 13
- C**
- Calcitonin, 47, 48f, 48
- Capillaries, 94
- continuous, 94–95
 - fenestrated, 95–96
 - sinusoids, 96
- Caput medusae, 154
- Cardiac muscle cell, 58
- diad, 59
 - glycogen storage, 58
 - intercalated discs, 58–59
 - sarcoplasmic reticulum, 59
 - striations, 58
 - terminal cisterna, 59
 - transverse tubules, 59
- Cardiac muscle tissue, 51
- muscle cell, 58 (*see also* Cardiac muscle cell)
- Cardiomyocyte. *See* Cardiac muscle cell
- Cartilage
- elastic, 37–38, 49
 - fibrocartilage, 38, 49
 - hyaline, 36–37, 49
- Cataract, 247
- Cellular activity, cytologic features
- indicating, 8
- Central nervous system (CNS), 63, 235
- brain, 71–73
 - spinal cord, 73–74
- Centriole, 7
- Centrosome, 7
- Cerebellar cortex, 72
- granular layer, 73
 - molecular layer, 72–73
 - Purkinje cell layer, 73
- Cerebellar medulla, 73
- Cerebral cortex, 72
- Cerebral medulla, 72
- Chondrocytes, 36
- Chromatin, 4
- Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), 168
- Cilia, 15
- Ciliated pseudostratified columnar epithelium, 17
- Ciliated simple columnar epithelium, 17
- Circulatory system, 83
- blood, 83–86
 - blood vessels, 91–92
 - arteries, 92–94
 - capillaries, 94–96
 - veins, 97–98
 - heart, 88–91
- Collagen fibers, 28
- Colonic polyps, 149
- Columnar epithelium, 14
- Communicating junctions, 12
- Compact bone, 41, 42
- Haversian system, 42–43
 - inner circumferential lamellae, 44
 - interstitial lamellae, 43
 - outer circumferential lamellae, 44
- Confocal microscopy, 8
- Connective tissue, 25–49
- cells
 - adipocytes, 26
 - eosinophils, 27
 - fibroblasts, 25
 - fibrocytes, 26
 - lymphocytes, 27
 - macrophages, 27
 - mast cells, 26
 - neutrophils, 28
 - plasma cells, 27
 - characteristics of, 25
 - connective tissue proper, 29–32
 - fibers
 - collagen, 28
 - elastic, 28
 - reticular, 28
 - functions of, 25
 - ground substance, 29
 - growth of, 39
 - appositional growth, 39
 - interstitial growth, 39
 - isogenous group, 39
 - specialized, 33–35
 - supporting
 - bone, 39–46
 - cartilage, 36–38
 - vascularity, 35, 39
- Connective tissue proper
- dense irregular connective tissue, 32
 - collagen fibers, 32
 - fibrocytes, 32

dense regular connective tissue,
 32, 35
 collagen fibers, 32
 fibrocytes, 32
 loose (areolar) connective tissue,
 29, 35
 cell types, 30–31
 fibers, 29–30
 ground substance, 30
 Continuous capillaries, 94–96
 Corpus albicans, 218
 Corpus luteum, 217–218, 219, 220
 granulosa lutein cells, 218
 theca lutein cells, 218
 Cremaster muscles, 207
 Cuboidal epithelium, 14
 Cushing disease, 193
 Cystic fibrosis, 124
 Cytology, 4–7
 Cytoskeleton, 6–7

D

Dartos muscles, 207
 Deep vein thrombosis (DVT), 99
 Dense regular connective tissue,
 60–61, 82
 Dermal papillae, 116
 Dermal ridges, 116
 Dermis, skin, 116, 118
 papillary dermis, 116, 118
 reticular dermis, 116, 118
 Desmosomes, 12
 Diabetes insipidus, 194
 Diabetes mellitus
 type I, 158
 type II, 158–159
 Diabetic nephropathy, 183
 Diffuse lymphoid tissues, 101
 Digestive system, 125
 esophagus, 136–138
 gall bladder, 155
 gastrointestinal tract, 132–135
 large intestine, 146–149
 liver, 150–153
 oral cavity, 125–129
 pancreas, 156–158
 salivary glands, 129–132
 small intestine, 141–145
 stomach, 138–140
 Dilator pupillae, 243
 Discontinuous capillaries. *See*
 Sinusoids
 Distal convoluted tubule (DCT), 179
 Diverticulitis, 149
 Ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS), 232

E

Ear, 247–249
 external, 247
 inner, 249, 250–253
 bony labyrinth, 250
 membranous labyrinth, 250–253
 middle, 248
 vestibulocochlear nerve, 249
 Eccrine glands, 122, 123
 Elastic arteries, 92–93
 Elastic cartilage, 37–38, 49
 Elastic connective tissue, 33
 Elastic fibers, 28
 Electron microscopy, 9
 Embedding, tissue, 1
 Emphysema, 173
 Endochondral ossification, 48
 Endocrine glands, 23. *See also*
 Glandular epithelia
 Endocrine system
 adrenal gland, 194–195
 parathyroid gland, 198
 pineal gland, 199
 pituitary gland/hypophysis, 189–192
 thyroid gland, 196–197
 Endosteum, 41
 Endothelium, 19
 Eosin, 2
 Eosinophilia, 3
 Eosinophils, 27, 85
 Ependymal cells, 68
 Epidermal–melanin unit, 118
 Epidermis, skin, 115, 117
 basale, 116, 117
 corneum, 115, 117
 granulosum, 115, 117
 lucidum, 115
 and skin cancer
 basal cell carcinoma, 118
 melanoma, 119
 squamous cell carcinoma, 118
 spinosum, 116, 117
 thick skin vs. thin skin, 118
 Epiglottis, age-related changes, 164
 Epithelial tissue, 11–24
 cell–cell junctions
 desmosomes, 12
 gap junctions, 12
 zonula adherens, 12
 zonula occludens, 11
 cell–connective tissue junctions
 hemidesmosomes, 13
 classification
 apical specialization, 15
 formula, 16
 number of cell layers, 13–14

- Epithelial tissue (*continued*)
 shape of apical cells, 14
 transitional epithelium, 15
 glandular epithelia, 19 (*see also*
 Glandular epithelia)
 lining epithelia, 19
 Epithelioreticular cells, 110
 Erectile dysfunction, 211
 Erythrocytes, 84
 proteins maintaining shape of, 86, 87f
 Esophageal varices, 154
 Esophagus, 136–138
 Euchromatin, 4
 Exocrine glands, 23. *See also* Glandular
 epithelia
 vs. endocrine glands, 23
 Extracellular matrix (ECM)
 in connective tissue, 25, 37
 Eye, 235–238
 anterior chamber, 238
 aqueous humor, 240
 fibrous tunic, 235–236
 cornea, 235
 sclera, 236
 lens, 237
 posterior chamber, 238
 retina, 237
 fovea centralis, 237
 macula densa, 237
 optic disc, 237
 vascular tunic, 236
 choroid, 236
 ciliary body, 236
 iris, 237
 pupil, 237
 suspensory ligaments, 236
 vitreous cavity, 238
 vitreous humor, 239
- F**
 Fallopian tube, 226–228
 ampulla, 226
 infundibulum, 226
 isthmus, 227
 mucosa, 227
 muscularis, 227
 serosa, 228
 uterine, 227
 Female reproductive system
 fallopian tube, 226–228
 mammary glands, 229–231
 ovaries, 213–218
 uterus, 220–226
 vagina, 228
- Fenestrated capillaries, 95–96
 Fertilization, 219
 Fibers, in cells, 6–7
 Fibroblasts, 25
 Fibrocartilage, 38, 49
 Fibrocytes, 26
 Fibrous tunic, 238–240
 cornea, 238
 corneoscleral limbus, 239
 sclera, 240
 Fixation, tissue, 1
 Floaters, 240
 Fluorescence microscopy, 8
 Folicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), 219
- G**
 Gall bladder, 155
 GALT (gut-associated lymphoid
 tissue), 102
 Ganglia, 77
 parasympathetic, 78–79
 spinal, 77–78
 sympathetic, 78
 Gap junctions, 12
 Gastric ulcer, 141
 Gastroesophageal reflux disease
 (GERD), 138
 Gastrointestinal tract, 132–135
 mucosa, 132–133
 muscularis propria, 134
 serosa, 134–135
 submucosa, 133
 Genital ducts
 ejaculatory ducts, 207
 epididymis, 205
 vas deferens, 206
 Germinal epithelium, 202, 214, 219
 Gigantism, 194
 Glandular epithelia, 19
 endocrine glands, 23
 cords, 23
 follicles, 23
 unicellular, 23
 exocrine glands, 19
 compound acinar, 21–22
 compound tubular, 21
 compound tubuloacinar, 22
 simple acinar, 21
 simple branched acinar, 21
 simple branched tubular, 20
 simple coiled tubular, 20
 simple tubular, 20
 unicellular, 19
 Glaucoma, 240

- Glial cells, 67
 astrocytes, 67
 ependymal cells, 68
 microglia, 67
 oligodendrocytes, 67
 satellite cells, 68
 Schwann cells, 68
- Glomerular filtration barrier, 182, 182f
- Golgi bodies, 5
- Graafian follicle, 219
- Granulocytes, 86
 vs. agranulocytes, 86–87
- Graves disease, 197
- Ground substance, connective tissue, 29
- H**
- Hair follicle, 120
- Hearing loss, conducting, 249
- Heart, 83, 88
 endocardium, 90
 endothelium, 90
 Purkinje fibers, 90
 subendocardial layer, 90
 epicardium, 90
 mesothelium, 90
 subepicardial connective tissue, 91
 fibroskeleton, 89
 left atrium, 89
 left ventricle, 89
 myocardium, 90
 right atrium, 88
 right ventricle, 89
 valves, 89
- Helicobacter pylori*, 141
- Hematocrit, 86
- Hematoxylin and eosin (H&E), 2
- Hemidesmosomes, 13
- Hepatic acinus, 153
- Hepatic lobules, 153
- Hepatic portal hypertension, complications of, 154
- Heterochromatin, 4
- Histochemistry, 2
- Histologic look-a-likes
 eccrine and apocrine glands, 123
 hyaline cartilage, elastic cartilage and fibrocartilage, 49
 lymph node, thymus and spleen, 113
 lymphocytes and monocytes, 88
 mammary glands, parotid salivary glands and pancreas, 232
 palatine, pharyngeal and lingual tonsils, 105
 pineal, prostate and parathyroid gland, 199
 proximal convoluted tubule, distal convoluted tubule and collecting tubules and ducts, 188
 rete testis, epididymis and seminal vesicles, 199
 simple columnar, pseudostratified squamous and transitional epithelium, 24
 smooth muscle, dense regular connective tissue and nerve, 60–61, 82
 thick and thin skin, 118
 thyroid gland and active mammary gland, 197
 trachea, bronchi and bronchioles, 168
- Histology, 1
 techniques in, 1–3
- Human chorionic gonadotrophin (hCG), 220
- Hyaline cartilage, 36–37, 49
- Hypercalcemia, 198
- Hyperthyroidism, 197
- Hypophysis, 189–192
- Hypothalamus, 192
- Hypothyroidism, 197
- I**
- Immunofluorescence, 3
- Immunohistochemistry, 2
- Integral membrane proteins, 86, 87f
- Integumentary system, 115. *See also* Skin
 accessory structures, 120–123
 sensory structures, 119–120
 thick skin, 115–116
 thin skin, 117–118
- Intermediate filaments, 6–7
- Interneurons, 70
- Interstitial fluid dynamics, 35
- Iris, 241
 dilator pupillae, 241
 parasympathetic innervation of, 243
 pupil, 241
 sphincter pupillae, 241
 stroma, 241
- Ischemic cardiomyopathy, 98
- J**
- Juxtaglomerular (JG), 180

K

- Keratin intermediate filaments, 8
- Keratinization, 15
- Keratinized stratified squamous epithelium, 17
- Kidney, 175–180
 - blood supply, 183–185
 - lobular necrosis, 185
 - nephron, 177–180

L

- Lamellar bone, 46
- Large intestine, 146–149
- Laryngitis, 164
- LASIK, 240
- Leiomyoma, 61
- Leiomyosarcoma, 61
- Lens, 246
 - capsule, 246
 - fibers, 246
 - subcapsular epithelium, 246
- Leukocytes, 101
- Luteinizing hormone (LH), 219
- Light microscopy, 8
- Lingual tonsil, 104–105
- Lining epithelia, 19
- Lipofuscin, 3
- Liver, 150–153, 154f
 - cirrhosis, 153–154
 - hepatic lobule, 150–151
- Lobular carcinoma in situ (LCIS), 232
- Loop of Henle, 181
- Lower respiratory tract, 164–168. *See also* Respiratory system
 - bronchi, 166
 - bronchioles, 167
 - terminal bronchioles, 167–168
 - trachea, 164–165
- Lymph, 107
 - flow of, 107, 108f
 - nodes, 106, 113
 - macroscopic features, 106
 - microscopic features, 106–107
- Lymphadenitis, 107
- Lymphatic system, 101
 - lymph nodes, 106–107
 - lymphoid tissues, 101
 - spleen, 111–112
 - thymus, 108–110
 - tonsils, 103–105
- Lymphocytes, 27, 85, 87, 88
- Lymphoid nodules, 102
- Lymphoid tissues, 101
 - diffuse, 101
 - lymphoid nodules, 102

M

- Macrophages, 27
- Macula adherens, 12
- Male reproductive system, 201–211
 - accessory glands, 208–209
 - genital ducts, 205–207
 - penis, 210–211
 - testis, 201–204
- MALT (mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue), 102
- Mammary glands, 229–231
 - active, 231
 - inactive, 230
 - lactating, 231
- Marfan syndrome, 36
- Marrow space, 42, 46
 - red marrow, 46
 - yellow marrow, 46
- Masson trichrome, 2
- Mast cells, 26
- Masticatory mucosa, 125
- Meiosis, 219. *See also* Female reproductive system
- Meissner corpuscles, 119
- Melanin, 3
- Membranous ossification, 48
- Meninges, 69
 - arachnoid mater, 69
 - arachnoid trabeculae, 69
 - subarachnoid space, 70
 - dura mater, 69
 - epidural space, 69
 - subdural space, 69
 - pia mater, 70
- Merkel cells, 119
- Mesenchymal tissue, 34–35
- Mesenchyme, 35
- Mesothelium, 19
- Microglia, 67
- Microscopy, 8–9
- Microtubules, 7
- Microvilli, 15, 145
- Middle ear infection, 249
- Mitochondria, 5
- Mnemonic
 - adrenal cortical layers and hormone products, 195
 - chromophils of adenohypophysis and hormone products, 193
 - corneal layers, 240
 - layers of thick skin epidermis, 117
 - pancreatic islet cells and secretions, 159
 - retinal layers, 245
 - skeletal muscle fibers, 58
 - white blood cells in peripheral blood, 88

- Monocytes, 85, 88
Motor neurons, 70
Mucosa, 135
 lining, 125
Multilocular (brown) adipose tissue, 34
Multipolar neuron, 66
Muscle-building exercises, 52
Muscle tissues, 51
 cardiac muscle, 51 (*see also* Cardiac muscle tissue)
 skeletal muscle, 51 (*see also* Skeletal muscle tissue)
 smooth muscle, 52
Muscular arteries, 93
Myasthenia gravis, 58
Myocardial infarction (MI), 59, 99
- N**
- Nail, 121
 eponychium, 121
 hyponychium, 121
 nail bed, 121
 nail matrix, 121
 nail plate, 121
 nail root, 121
Nasal congestion, 164
Nephron, 181–182, 181f
 cortical, 182
 distal convoluted tubule, 181
 juxtamedullary apparatus, 181–182
 juxtamedullary, 182
 loop of Henle, 181
 proximal convoluted tubule, 181
 renal corpuscle, 181
Nerves, 60–61, 75, 82
 axons, 75
 myelinated, 75
 node of Ranvier, 76
 nonmyelinated, 76
 endoneurium, 77
 epineurium, 76
 perineurium, 76
Neural cells. *See* Neurons
Neural tissues, 63
 components
 glial cells, 67–68
 meninges, 69
 neurons, 63–67
Neurons, 63
 axon, 64
 axon terminals, 65
 initial segment, 65
 myelin sheath, 65
 node of Ranvier, 65
 cell body, 63
 axon hillock, 64
 Nissl bodies, 64
 nucleus, 64
 dendrites, 64
 types of
 on function, 69–70
 on morphology, 66
Neurotransmitters
 effects of, and pharmaceutical agents, 82
 removal of, from synaptic cleft, 80
Neutrophils, 28, 85
Nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium, 18
Nose bleed, 164
Nuclear envelope, 4
Nucleolus, 4
Nucleus, 4
- O**
- Oligodendrocytes, 67, 70
 vs. Schwann cells, 70
Oogenesis, 219
Oral cavity, 125–129. *See also* Digestive system
Osteoblasts, 40
Osteoclasts, 40
Osteocytes, 40
Osteoporosis, 49
Osteoprogenitors, 39
Ovarian cycle, 219–220
Ovaries, 213–218
 corpus albicans, 218
 corpus luteum, 218
 cortex, 213–214
 follicles, 214–217
 medulla, 214
- P**
- Pacinian corpuscles, 119
Palatine tonsils, 103–104, 105
Pampiniform venous plexus, 207
Pancreas, 156–158
Parasympathetic ganglia, 78
 postsynaptic neuron cell bodies, 78
 satellite cells, 78
Parathyroid gland, 198
Parathyroid hormone (PTH), 47, 48, 48f
Pemphigus, 13
Penile erection, 211

- Penis
 corpora cavernosa, 210
 corpus spongiosum, 210
 erectile tissues, 211
 glands of littré, 211
 penile urethra, 211
 tunica albuginea, 210
- Perichondrium, 37
- Pericytes, 98
- Periodic acid–Schiff (PAS), 2
- Periosteum, 41
- Peripheral membrane proteins, 86, 87f
- Peripheral nervous system (PNS), 63
 ganglia, 77–79
 nerves, 75–77
 response to neuronal injury in,
 81, 81f
- Pharyngeal tonsils, 104, 105
- Pheochromocytoma, 196
- Pineal gland, 199
- Pituitary adenomas, 193
- Pituitary gland, 189–192
 blood supply, 193f
- Placenta accreta, 229
- Plasma cells, 27
- Plicae circulares, 145
- Portal lobule, 153
- Pregnancy test, 229
- Presbyopia, 247
- Processing, tissue, 1
- Progesterone, 219
- Prostate-specific antigen (PSA), 210
- Prostatic carcinoma, 210
- Prostatic zones
 central zone, 209
 fibromuscular zone, 210
 peripheral zone, 209
 periurethral zone, 209
 transitional zone, 209
- Proximal convoluted tubule (PCT), 178
- Pseudostratified epithelium, 14
- Pseudostratified squamous epithelium,
 24
- Pseudounipolar neuron. *See* Unipolar
 neuron
- R**
- Rectal hemorrhoids, 154
- Red blood cells. *See* Erythrocytes
- Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system,
 182
- Respiratory epithelium, 19
- Respiratory system, 161
 lower respiratory tract, 164–168
 respiratory portion, 169–171
 upper respiratory tract, 161–164
- Reticular cells, 110
- Reticular connective tissue, 33
- Reticular fibers, 28, 33
- Reticulocytes, 33
- Retina, 243–245
 detached, 245
 neural layer, 244–245
 pigmented layer, 243–244
- Rickets, 49
- Rigor mortis, 58
- Rough endoplasmic reticulum (rER), 6
- Ruffini's corpuscles, 120
- S**
- Salivary glands
 parotid, 129–130
 sublingual, 131–132
 submandibular, 130–131
- Sarcolemma, 52
- Sarcoplasm, 52
- Sarcoplasmic reticulum, 52
- Satellite cells, 68
 in skeletal muscles, 52
- Schwann cells, 68, 70
- Scurvy, 36
- Sebaceous glands, 122
- Sectioning, tissue, 1
- Sensorineural hearing loss, 249
- Sensory neurons, 70
- Sentinel node, 107
 biopsy, 107–108
- Sertoli cells, 202
- Sickle cell anemia, 87–88
- Simple columnar epithelium, 17, 24
- Simple cuboidal epithelium, 16
- Simple epithelium, 13
- Simple squamous epithelium, 16
- Sinusoids, 96
- Skeletal muscle tissue, 51
 motor unit, 56
 muscle contraction process, 57
 neuromuscular junction, 56
 organization
 endomysium, 52
 epimysium, 53
 fascicle, 53
 muscles, 53
 perimysium, 53
 skeletal muscle fiber, 52
 skeletal muscle cell (fiber)
 myofibrils, 53
 myofilaments, 54

- sarcomere, 53
- sarcoplasmic reticulum, 54
- transverse tubules, 54
- type I fibers, 58
- type IIa fibers, 58
- type IIb fibers, 58
- sliding filament model, 56
- striations, 55
 - A band, 55
 - H band, 55
 - I band, 55
 - M line, 55
 - Z line, 55
- triad, 55
- Skin, 115
 - accessory structures, 120–123
 - sensory structures, 119–120
 - thick
 - dermis, 116
 - epidermis, 115–116
 - thin
 - dermis, 118
 - epidermis, 117
- Small arteries, 94
- Small intestine, 141–145
 - cells of, 142–143
 - duodenum, 143
 - ileum, 144–145
 - jejunum, 144
- Smooth endoplasmic reticulum (sER), 6
- Smooth muscle, 60–61, 82
 - cell, 60
- Somatic nervous system (SNS), 63
- Specialized mucosa, 126. *See also*
 - Digestive system
 - circumvallate papillae, 126
 - filiform papillae, 126
 - foliate papillae, 126
 - fungiform papillae, 126
 - serous glands, 127
 - taste buds, 126
- Spermatogenesis, 204–205, 205f
 - ideal temperature for, 207
- Spermatozoa, path of, 207
- Spermiogenesis, 204
- Sphincter pupillae, 243
- Spinal cord
 - cortex, 73
 - medulla, 74
 - central canal, 74
 - dorsal horn, 74
 - ventral horn, 74
- Spinal ganglia, 77
 - axon bundles, 77
 - capsule, 77
 - satellite cells, 77
 - unipolar neuronal cell bodies, 77
- Spleen, 111–112, 113
 - closed circulation, 113
 - macroscopic features, 111
 - capsule, 111
 - red pulps, 111
 - trabeculae, 111
 - white pulps, 111
 - microscopic features
 - central artery, 112
 - germinal center, 112
 - periarterial lymphatic sheath, 112
 - white pulps, 111
 - open circulation, 113
 - red pulps, 111
 - splenic cords, 112
 - splenic sinuses, 112
- Splenomegaly, 113
- Sponge bone, 41, 44
 - canaliculi, 45
 - endosteum, 45
 - osteocytes in lacunae, 45
 - trabeculae, 45
- Squamous epithelium, 14
- Staining, 1. *See also* Staining methods
 - methods
 - hematoxylin and eosin, 2
 - histochemistry, 2
 - immunofluorescence, 3
 - immunohistochemistry, 2
- Stereocilia, 15
- Stomach, 138–140
 - cardia, 138
 - fundus, 138
 - gastric pits, 139
 - pylorus, 139
 - rugae, 139
 - villi, 139
- Stratified columnar epithelium, 18
- Stratified cuboidal epithelium, 18
- Stratified epithelium, 14
- Surfactant, 171
- Sweat, 124
 - glands
 - apocrine, 123
 - eccrine, 122, 123
 - innervation of, 123
- Sympathetic ganglia
 - capsule, 78
 - postsynaptic multipolar neuronal cell bodies, 78
 - satellite cells, 78
- Synapse, 79–80, 79f

T

- Testis, 201–204
 - blood barrier, 205, 205f
 - mediastinum, 202
 - rete, 204
 - seminiferous tubules, 202–203
 - septa, 202
 - stroma, 204
 - tunica albuginea, 201
 - tunica vaginalis, 201
- Thymus, 108, 113
 - macroscopic features, 108–109
 - microscopic features, 109–110
- Thyroid gland, 196–197
- Tissue acquisition, 1
- Tissue preparation, 1
- Tissue-specific intermediate filaments, 8
- Tonsillitis, 105
- Tonsils, 102
 - lingual, 104–105
 - palatine, 103–104
 - pharyngeal, 104
- Tooth, 127
 - alveolar processes, 129
 - cementum, 128
 - dentin, 127
 - enamel, 127
 - periodontal ligament, 129
 - pulp cavity, 128
- Toxic goiter, 197
- Transitional epithelium, 15, 18, 24
- Tubal ectopic pregnancy, 229
- Tunica albuginea, 210
- Turnover rate, epithelium, 19

U

- Unilocular (white) adipose tissue, 34
- Unipolar neuron, 66
- Unmyelinated axons, of nerve, 80, 80f
- Upper respiratory tract, 161–164.
 - See also* Respiratory system
 - larynx, 163–164
 - nasal cavity, 161–162
- Uremia, 124
- Ureter, 185–186
- Urinalysis, 183
- Urinary bladder, 186–188
- Urinary system
 - collecting portion, 181
 - collecting tubules and ducts, 182

- cortical nephrons, 182
- excretory portion, 180
- glomerular filtration barrier, 182, 182f
- juxtamedullary nephrons, 182
- kidney, 175–180
 - blood supply, 184–185
- nephron, 181–182, 181f
- renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, 182
- ureter, 185–186
- urinary bladder, 186–188
- vasopressin, 183
- Uterus, 220–226
 - cervix, 225–226
 - endometrium, 221–222
 - myometrium, 223
 - perimetrium, 223
- Uveal melanoma, 243

V

- Vagina, 228
 - adventitia, 228
 - mucosa, 228
 - muscularis, 228
- Vascular tunic, 241–242
 - choroid, 242
 - ciliary body, 241–242
 - iris, 241
- Vasectomy, 207
- Vasopressin, 183
- Veins
 - large, 98
 - medium, 97
 - sinusoids, 97
 - venules, 97
- Villi, 145
- Vimentin intermediate filaments, 8

W

- White blood cells, 85
- Woven bone, 47
 - vs. lamellar bone, 47, 47f

Z

- Zonula adherens, 12
- Zonula occludens, 11

